

# DENON<sup>®</sup>

## AVC-X8500HA

INTEGRATED NETWORK AV AMPLIFIER

# Owner's Manual

[Front panel](#)[Display](#)[Rear panel](#)[Remote](#)[Index](#)

<b>Accessories</b>	<b>8</b>
Inserting the batteries	9
Operating range of the remote control unit	9
<b>Features</b>	<b>10</b>
High quality sound	10
High performance	13
Easy operation	17
<b>Part names and functions</b>	<b>18</b>
Front panel	18
Display	22
Rear panel	24
Remote control unit	28

## Connections

<b>Speaker installation</b>	<b>33</b>
<b>Connecting speakers</b>	<b>42</b>
Before connecting speakers	42
Speaker configuration and “Amp Assign” settings	46
Connecting 5.1-channel speakers	48
Connecting 7.1-channel speakers	49
Connecting 9.1-channel speakers	54
Connecting 13.1-channel speakers	63
Connecting 15.1-channel speakers	68
Bi-amp connection	74
Connecting 11.1-channel speakers: Second pair of front speakers	76
Connecting multi-zone speakers	77
Connecting an external power amplifier	81

<b>Connecting a TV</b>	<b>82</b>
Connection 1 : TV equipped with an HDMI connector and compatible with the ARC (Audio Return Channel) / eARC (Enhanced Audio Return Channel)	83
Connection 2 : TV equipped with an HDMI connector and incompatible with the ARC (Audio Return Channel) / eARC (Enhanced Audio Return Channel)	84
Connection 3 : TV equipped without an HDMI connector	85
<b>Connecting a playback device</b>	<b>86</b>
Connecting a set-top box (Satellite tuner/cable TV)	87
Connecting a DVD player or Blu-ray Disc player	88
Connecting a Blu-ray Disc player compatible with the Denon Link HD function	89
Connecting a player device compatible with the 8K	90
Connecting a video camcorder or game console	91
Connecting a turntable	92
Connecting a device with a multi-channel output connector	93
<b>Connecting a USB memory device to the USB port</b>	<b>94</b>
<b>Connecting to a home network (LAN)</b>	<b>95</b>
Wired LAN	95
Wireless LAN	96
<b>Connecting an external control device</b>	<b>97</b>
REMOTE CONTROL jacks	97
TRIGGER OUT jacks	98
<b>Connecting the power cord</b>	<b>99</b>



## Playback

<b>Basic operation</b>	<b>101</b>
Turning the power on	101
Selecting the input source	101
Adjusting the volume	102
Turning off the sound temporarily (Muting)	102
Playback a DVD player/Blu-ray Disc player	102
<b>Playing a USB memory device</b>	<b>103</b>
Playing files stored on USB memory devices	104
<b>Listening to music on a Bluetooth device</b>	<b>107</b>
Playing music from Bluetooth device	108
Pairing with other Bluetooth devices	110
Reconnecting to this unit from a Bluetooth device	111
<b>Listening to Internet Radio</b>	<b>112</b>
Listening to Internet Radio	113
<b>Playing back files stored on a PC or NAS</b>	<b>114</b>
Playing back files stored on a PC or NAS	115

<b>Getting the HEOS App</b>	<b>118</b>
HEOS Account	119
Playing from streaming music services	120
Listening to the same music in multiple rooms	123
<b>AirPlay function</b>	<b>127</b>
Playing songs from your iPhone, iPod touch or iPad	128
Playing iTunes music with this unit	128
Play a song from your iPhone, iPod touch or iPad on multiple synced devices (AirPlay 2)	129
<b>Spotify Connect function</b>	<b>130</b>
Playing Spotify music with this unit	130
<b>Convenience functions</b>	<b>131</b>
Adding to HEOS Favorites	132
Playing back HEOS Favorites	132
Deleting a HEOS Favorites	133
Adjusting the audibility of dialog and vocals (Dialog Enhancer)	133
Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Channel Level Adjust)	134
Adjusting the tone (Tone)	135
Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)	136
Adjusting the picture quality for your viewing environment (Picture Mode)	137
Playing the same music in all zones (All Zone Stereo)	138



<b>Selecting a sound mode</b>	<b>139</b>	<b>Remote lock function</b>	<b>165</b>
Selecting a sound mode	140	Disabling the sensor function of the remote control unit	165
Direct playback	141	Enabling the remote sensor function	165
Pure Direct playback	142	<b>Web control function</b>	<b>166</b>
Auto surround playback	142	Controlling the unit from a web control	166
Description of sound mode types	143	<b>Playback in ZONE2/ZONE3 (Another room)</b>	<b>168</b>
Sound mode that can be selected for each input signal	149	Connecting ZONE	168
<b>HDMI Control function</b>	<b>155</b>	Playback in ZONE2/ZONE3	173
Setting procedure	155		
<b>Smart Menu function</b>	<b>156</b>		
<b>Sleep timer function</b>	<b>158</b>	<b>Settings</b>	
Using the sleep timer	159	<b>Menu map</b>	<b>175</b>
<b>Quick select plus function</b>	<b>160</b>	Menu operations	179
Calling up the settings	161		
Changing the settings	162		
<b>Panel lock function</b>	<b>163</b>		
Disabling all key button operations	163		
Disabling all button operations except VOLUME	163		
Canceling the Panel lock function	164		



<b>Audio</b>	<b>180</b>	<b>Speakers</b>	<b>217</b>
Subwoofer Level Adjust	180	<b>Audyssey® Setup</b>	<b>217</b>
Bass Sync	180	Procedure for speaker settings (Audyssey® Setup)	219
Surround Parameter	181	Error messages	225
Restorer	189	Retrieving Audyssey® Setup settings	227
Audio Delay	190	<b>Manual Setup</b>	<b>228</b>
Volume	191	Amp Assign	228
Audyssey®	192	Speaker Config.	238
Graphic EQ	195	Distances	244
<b>Video</b>	<b>197</b>	Levels	245
Picture Adjust	197	Crossovers	246
HDMI Setup	199	Bass	247
Output Settings	204	Front Speaker	248
Analog Video Out	208	2ch Playback	248
On Screen Display	208	<b>Network</b>	<b>251</b>
4K/8K Signal Format	209	Information	251
TV Format	211	Connection	251
<b>Inputs</b>	<b>212</b>	Wi-Fi Setup	252
Input Assign	212	Settings	254
Source Rename	214	Network Control	256
Hide Sources	215	Friendly Name	256
Source Level	215	Diagnostics	257
Input Select	216		



<b>HEOS Account</b>	<b>258</b>	<b>Operating external devices with the remote control unit</b>	<b>274</b>
You have not signed in	258	Registering preset codes	275
You have already signed in	258	Operating devices	278
<b>General</b>	<b>259</b>	Operating learning function	281
Language	259	Operating macro function	284
ECO	259	Specifying the zone used with the remote control unit	288
ZONE2 Setup / ZONE3 Setup	263	Setting the Remote ID	289
Zone Rename	265	Setting the display time length of the remote control unit display	289
Quick Select Names	265	Setting the back light	290
Trigger Out 1 / Trigger Out 2	266	Restoring all settings of the remote control unit to default	290
Front Display	266		
Firmware	267		
Information	270		
Remote ID	272		
Usage Data	272		
Save & Load	273		
Setup Lock	273		



## Tips

<b>Tips</b>	<b>292</b>
<b>Troubleshooting</b>	<b>294</b>
Power does not turn on / Power is turned off	295
Operations cannot be performed through the remote control unit	296
Display on this unit shows nothing	296
No sound comes out	297
Desired sound does not come out	298
Sound is interrupted or noise occurs	301
No video is shown on the TV	302
The menu screen is not displayed on the TV	304
The color of the menu screen and operations content displayed on the television is different from normal	304
AirPlay cannot be played back	305
USB memory devices cannot be played back	306
Bluetooth cannot be played back	307
The Internet radio cannot be played back	308
Music files on PC or NAS cannot be played back	309
Various online services cannot be played	310
The HDMI Control function does not work	310
Cannot connect to a wireless LAN network	311
When using HDMI ZONE2, the devices does not function properly	312
Update/upgrade error messages	313
<b>Resetting factory settings</b>	<b>314</b>
<b>Resetting network settings</b>	<b>315</b>
<b>Restoring the firmware to the factory defaults</b>	<b>316</b>

## Appendix

<b>About HDMI</b>	<b>317</b>
<b>Video conversion function</b>	<b>321</b>
<b>Playing back a USB memory devices</b>	<b>323</b>
<b>Playing back a Bluetooth device</b>	<b>324</b>
<b>Playing back a file saved on a PC or NAS</b>	<b>325</b>
<b>Playing back Internet Radio</b>	<b>326</b>
<b>Personal memory plus function</b>	<b>326</b>
<b>Last function memory</b>	<b>326</b>
<b>Explanation of terms</b>	<b>327</b>
<b>Trademark information</b>	<b>337</b>
<b>Specifications</b>	<b>340</b>
<b>Index</b>	<b>346</b>



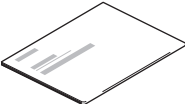
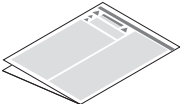
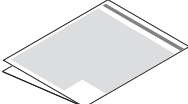
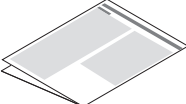
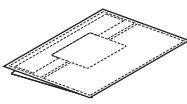
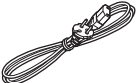

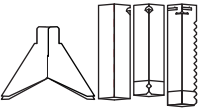
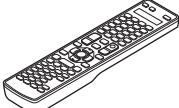


Thank you for purchasing this Denon product.

To ensure proper operation, please read this owner's manual carefully before using the product.

After reading this manual, be sure to keep it for future reference.

## Accessories

Check that the following parts are supplied with the product.

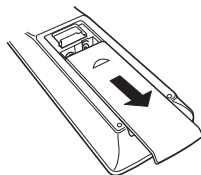
 <p>Quick Start Guide</p>	 <p>Safety Instructions</p>	 <p>Cautions on Using Batteries</p>	 <p>Notes on radio</p>	 <p>Cable labels</p>
 <p>Power cord</p>	 <p>Sound calibration microphone</p>	 <p>Sound calibration microphone stand</p>	 <p>Remote control unit (RC-1221)</p>	 <p>LR6/AA batteries</p>
 <p>External antennas for Bluetooth/wireless connectivity</p>				



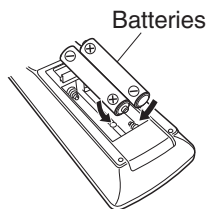


## Inserting the batteries

- 1 Slide the rear cover off the remote control unit in the arrow direction.



- 2 Insert two batteries correctly into the battery compartment as indicated.



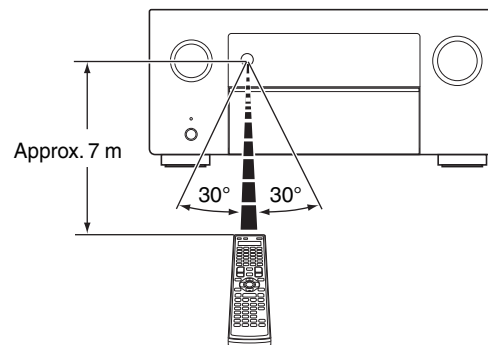
- 3 Put the rear cover back on.

### NOTE

- To prevent damage or leakage of battery fluid:
  - Do not use a new battery together with an old one.
  - Do not use two different types of batteries.
- Remove the batteries from the remote control unit if it will not be in use for long periods.
- If the battery fluid should leak, carefully wipe the fluid off the inside of the battery compartment and insert new batteries.

## Operating range of the remote control unit

Point the remote control unit at the remote sensor when operating it.



# Features

## High quality sound

### • The Ultimate 13.2-channel Home Theater Experience

Featuring Denon's most advanced and sophisticated power amplifier design, this unit delivers high-power performance at 150 watts per channel (8  $\Omega$ /ohms, 20 Hz - 20 kHz, T.H.D.: 0.05 %, 2ch. driven) to ensure a dynamic and precise entertainment experience. Low impedance drivers provide operational stability for a wide range of speakers and create a balanced, tonal sound.

### • Dolby Atmos (🔧 p. 328)

This unit is equipped with a decoder that supports Dolby Atmos audio format. The placement or movement of sound is accurately reproduced by the addition of overhead speakers, enabling you to experience an incredibly natural and realistic surround sound field.

### • Speaker Virtualizer (🔧 p. 183)

Speaker Virtualizer enables you to access a more immersive entertainment experience from traditional channel based speaker layouts through digital signal processing including Dolby Atmos height virtualization and surround virtualization.

- Speaker Virtualizer is not for use when both height speakers and surround speakers are connected.
- Height Virtualization may be applied when surround speakers are connected.

### • DTS:X Pro

This unit is equipped with the DTS:X Pro decoder technology. DTS:X Pro decoder brings the home theater experience to new heights with its immersive object based audio technology which removes the bounds of channels. Enjoy up to 13.1-channels of audio processing with DTS:X Pro to enjoy a full surround sound in exquisite detail.

### • DTS Virtual:X (🔧 p. 332)

DTS Virtual:X technology features DTS's proprietary virtual height and virtual surround processing to deliver an immersive sound experience from any type of input source (stereo to 7.1.4 channel) and speaker configuration.

- DTS Virtual:X is not for use when Height speakers are connected.

### • IMAX Enhanced (🔧 p. 332)

This IMAX Enhanced product have met stringent performance standards established by IMAX and DTS in order to create a consistent and higher bar for sound performance. DTS has developed a special method for reproducing an IMAX signature sound experience in the consumer's home. This method combines a unique conversion process for IMAX theatrical audio mixes utilizing an enhanced DTS codec technology. The IMAX theatrical audio format with point source surround speakers closely matches the speaker configuration most consumers have in their homes today. Coupled with DTS audio technology, IMAX Enhanced audio products will ensure the best and most accurate audio reproduction over 5.1 or more speaker channels.



- **MPEG-H**

This unit is equipped with the MPEG-H decoder technology. The MPEG-H Audio system enables immersive, interactive and customizable sound with advanced accessibility features such as dialogue enhancement and audio description.

- **Audyssey LFC™ (Low Frequency Containment) (🔍 p. 194)**

Audyssey LFC™ solves the problem of low frequency sounds disturbing people in neighboring rooms or apartments. Audyssey LFC™ dynamically monitors the audio content and removes the low frequencies that pass through walls, floors and ceilings. It then applies psychoacoustic processing to restore the perception of low bass for listeners in the room. The result is great sound that no longer disturbs the neighbors.

- **Discrete subwoofers and Audyssey Sub EQ HT™ (🔍 p. 218)**

The unit has two subwoofer output capability and can adjust the level and delay for each subwoofer individually.

Audyssey Sub EQ HT™ makes the integration seamless by first compensating for any level and delay differences between the two subwoofers and then applying Audyssey MultEQ® XT32 to both subwoofers together for improved deep bass response and detail.

- **Denon's unique high quality playback technology "Denon Link HD" (🔍 p. 336)**

This unit is equipped with our exclusive "Denon Link HD" technology. When connected to a Denon disc player that has Denon Link HD, the sound localization becomes more precise, with increased detail and definition. The system works by carrying the critical clock timing signals via the dedicated Denon Link HD connection, minimizing the jitter caused by conventional digital connections. This effect can be applied to an audio source of any media from a Blu-ray Disc player.

This technology enables the playback of 2-channel source audio or 7.1/5.1 multi-channel source audio through a maximum 11.1-channel speakers, achieving an even broader soundstage.



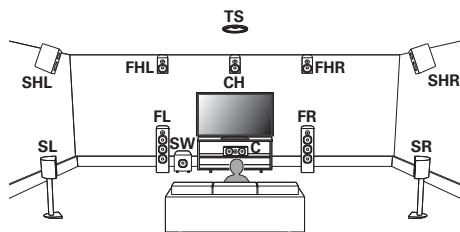
- **Auro-3D**

This unit is equipped with an Auro-3D decoder.

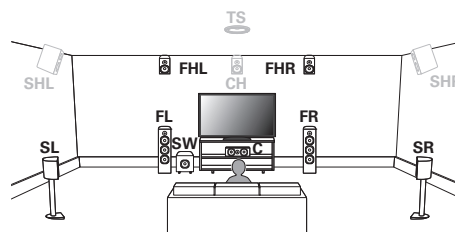
With Auro-3D, Front Height (FHL + FHR), Surround Height (SHL + SHR), Center Height (CH/optional) and Top Surround (TS/optional) are added to a conventional 5.1-channel system to achieve a natural and realistic sound field that is three-dimensional and fully immersive.

You will be able to fully enjoy Auro-3D playback if you properly place the speakers for Auro-3D.

■ Auro-3D playback



■ Dolby Atmos playback



- Auro-3D does not support a Dolby Atmos configuration using Top Front, Top Middle or Top Rear speakers. But it is possible to support both an Auro-3D and Dolby Atmos by adding Front Height and Rear Height speakers\* to a 5.1 configuration.

\* For an optimum Auro-3D experience Surround Height speakers are strongly recommended.



## High performance

- **Ultimate Home Theater Experience – 8K Ready**

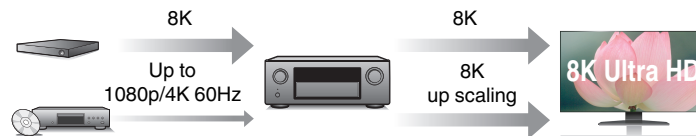
This unit delivers the ultimate home theater experience with 8K/60Hz pass-through, 4K/120Hz pass-through for gaming, and support for the latest HDMI specifications. This unit allows you to build the best 4K home theater system, and offers the convenience of knowing that the used AV receiver is ready for 8K format whenever the user decides to use it.

Enjoy the highest quality 3D audio and video for even the most demanding entertainment needs.

- **HDCP 2.3**

This unit is compatible with HDCP 2.3 copyright protection standard.

- **Digital video processor upscales SD (resolution) or HD (720p/1080p) / 4K to 8K**



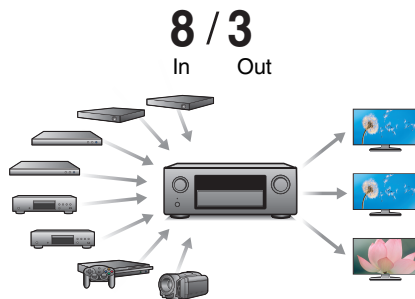
This unit is equipped with a 8K video upscaling function that allows SD (Standard Definition) or HD (High Definition)/4K 60Hz video to be output via HDMI at 8K (7680 × 4320 pixels) resolution. This function enables the device to be connected to a TV using a single HDMI cable, and produces high definition images for any video source.

- **Equipped with HDMI ZONE2 output (👉 p. 168)**

The ZONE2 multi-room output includes an HDMI output that lets you enjoy a different A/V source in that room, with another program playing in the main room.



- **HDMI connections enable connection to various digital AV devices (8 inputs, 3 outputs)**

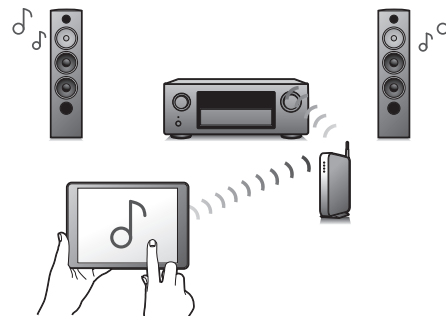


For connection to a broad range of digital sources, this unit features 8 HDMI inputs, including 1 on the front panel that lets you quickly and conveniently connect a camcorder, game console or other HDMI-equipped device. There are dual HDMI outputs for the main room, and a third HDMI output for another room.

- **eARC (Enhanced Audio Return Channel) function compatibility**

The eARC function is compatible with conventional ARC function-compatible audio formats in addition to multichannel linear PCM, Dolby TrueHD, Dolby Atmos, DTS-HD Master Audio, DTS:X and other audio formats a conventional ARC function cannot transmit. Additionally, connecting to an eARC function-compatible television enables enjoyment of higher-quality surround playback of the audio content played from your television.

- **The device is equipped with a AirPlay® function in addition to network functions such as Internet radio etc. (p. 127)**



You can enjoy a wide variety of content, including listening to Internet Radio, playing audio files stored on your PC. This unit also supports Apple AirPlay which lets you stream your music library from an iPhone®, iPad®, iPod touch® or iTunes®.

- **Supports AirPlay 2® wireless audio**

Sync multiple AirPlay 2 compatible devices/speakers for simultaneous playback.

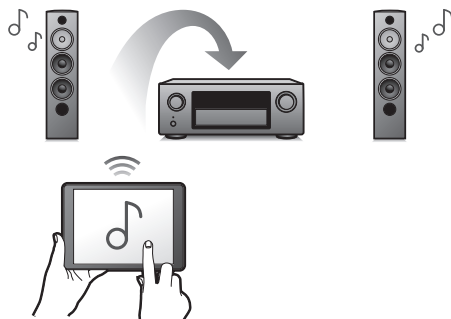
This unit supports AirPlay 2 and requires iOS 11.4 or later.



- **Playback of DSD and FLAC files via USB and networks**

This unit supports the playback of high resolution audio formats such as DSD (5.6 MHz) and FLAC 192 kHz files. It provides high quality playback of high resolution files.

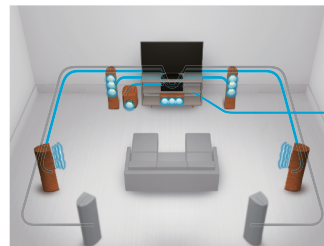
- **Wireless connection with Bluetooth devices can be carried out easily (☞ p. 107)**



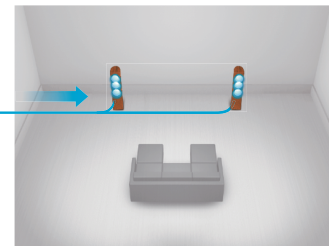
You can enjoy music simply by connecting wirelessly with your smartphone, tablet, PC, etc.

- **Multi-Room audio (☞ p. 138)**

[MAIN ZONE]



[ZONE2] / [ZONE3]



You can select and play back the respective inputs in MAIN ZONE, ZONE2 and ZONE3.

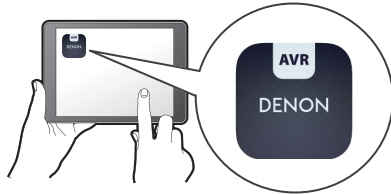
In addition, when the All Zone Stereo function is used, the music being played back in MAIN ZONE can be enjoyed in all the zones at the same time. This is useful when you want to let the background music propagate throughout the whole house.

- **Energy-saving design**

This unit is equipped with an ECO Mode function that allows you to enjoy music and movies while reducing the power consumption during use, and also an auto-standby function that automatically turns off the power supply when the unit is not in use. This helps reduce unnecessary power use.



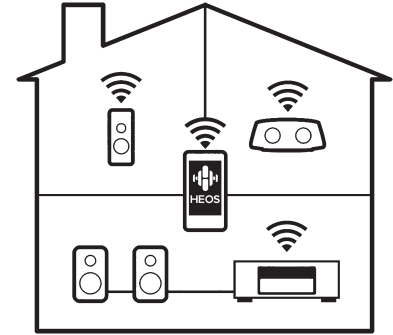
- Compatible with the “Denon 2016 AVR Remote” App\* for performing basic operations of the unit with an iPad, iPhone or Android™ devices (Google, Amazon Kindle Fire)



Along with many new features, the graphics and user interface have been completely overhauled. The new app gives you full control of this unit as well as access to its setup menu for detailed adjustments from your phones or tablets. “Denon 2016 AVR Remote” App also gives you quick access to the receiver’s status display, option menus, Denon Blu-ray Disc player control, and online owner’s manual for your convenience.

\* Download the appropriate “Denon 2016 AVR Remote” App for your iOS or Android devices. This unit needs to be connected to the same LAN or Wi-Fi (wireless LAN) network that the iPad, iPhone or Android™ is connected to.

- HEOS provides streaming music from your favorite online music sources



HEOS wireless multi-room sound system that enables you to enjoy your favorite music anywhere and everywhere around your home. By utilizing your existing home network and the HEOS App (available for iOS, Android and Amazon devices), you can explore, browse, and play music from your own music library or from many online streaming music services.

When multiple products with HEOS Built-in are connected to the same network, they can be grouped to play the same music on all products simultaneously, or different music can be played on each one.





## Easy operation

- **“Setup Assistant” provides easy-to-follow setup instructions**

First select the language when prompted. Then simply follow the instructions displayed on the TV screen to set up the speakers, network, etc.

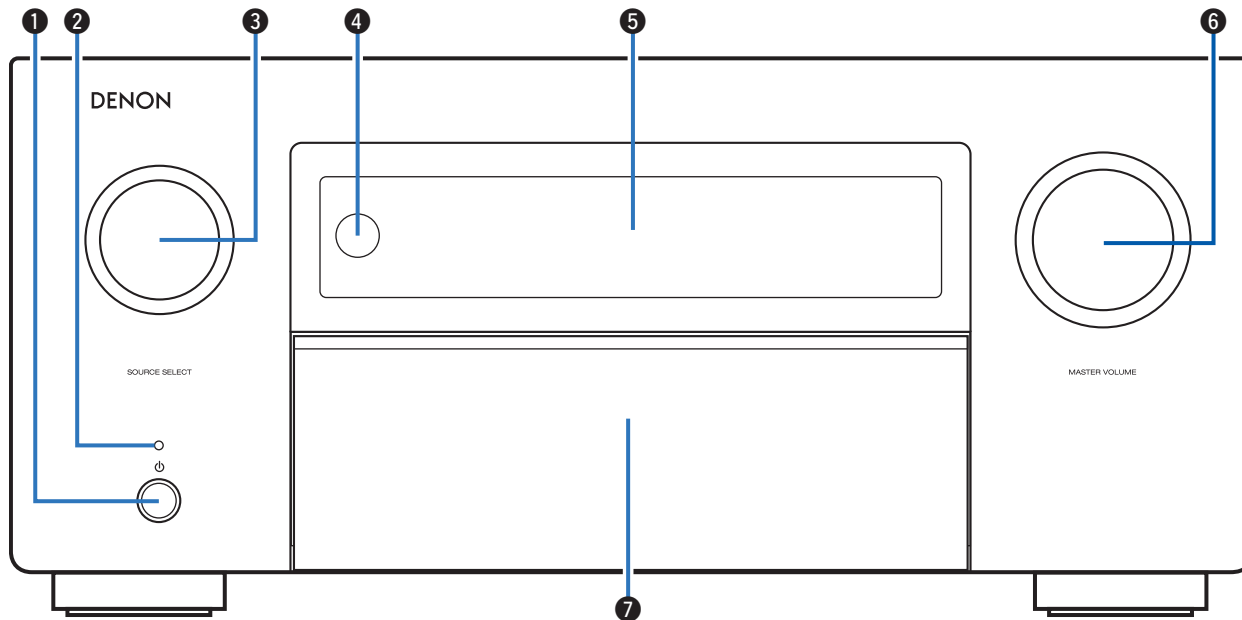
- **Easy to use Graphical User Interface**

This unit is equipped with a Graphical User Interface for improved operability.



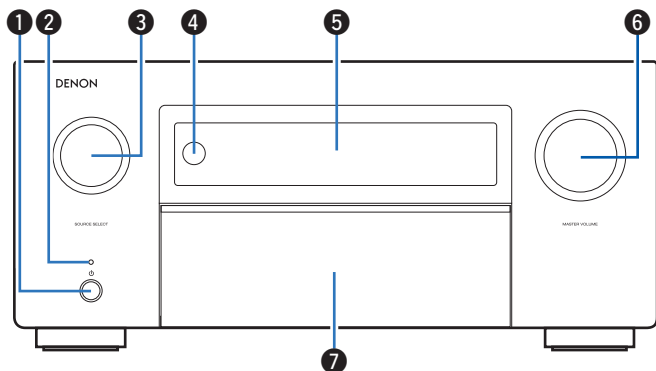
## Part names and functions

### Front panel



For details, see the next page.





### 1 Power operation button (⏻)

Used to turn the power of the MAIN ZONE (room where this unit is located) on/off (standby). (☞ p. 101)

### 2 Power indicator

This is lit as follows according to the power status:

- Green: Power on
- Off: Normal standby
- Red:
  - When “HDMI Pass Through” is set to “On” (☞ p. 199)
  - When “HDMI Control” is set to “On” (☞ p. 201)
  - When “Network Control” is set to “Always On” (☞ p. 256)

### 3 SOURCE SELECT knob

This selects the input source. (☞ p. 101)

### 4 Remote control sensor

This receives signals from the remote control unit. (☞ p. 9)

### 5 Display

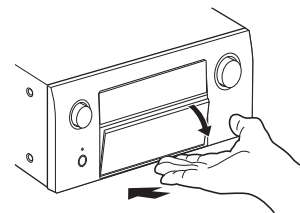
This displays various pieces of information. (☞ p. 22)

### 6 MASTER VOLUME knob

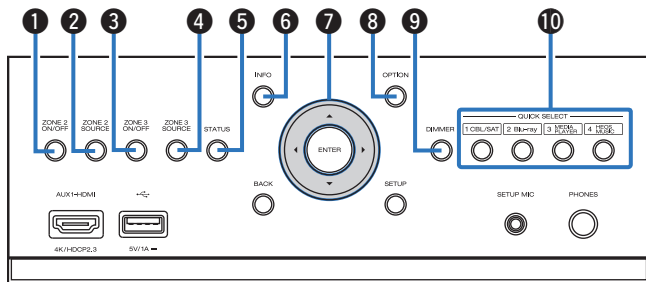
This adjusts the volume level. (☞ p. 102)

### 7 Door

When you are using buttons and/or connectors behind the door, press the bottom of the door to open it. Be careful not to catch your fingers when closing the door.



## With the door open



### 1 ZONE2 ON/OFF button

This turns the power of ZONE2 (another room) on/off. (👉 p. 173)

### 2 ZONE2 SOURCE button

This selects the input source for ZONE2. (👉 p. 173)

### 3 ZONE3 ON/OFF button

This turns the power of ZONE3 (another room) on/off. (👉 p. 173)

### 4 ZONE3 SOURCE button

This selects the input source for ZONE3. (👉 p. 173)

### 5 STATUS button

Each press of this switches the status information that is shown on the display.

### 6 Information button (INFO)

This displays the status information on the TV screen. (👉 p. 271)

### 7 Cursor buttons (Δ▽◀▶)

These select items.

### 8 OPTION button

This displays the option menu on the TV screen.

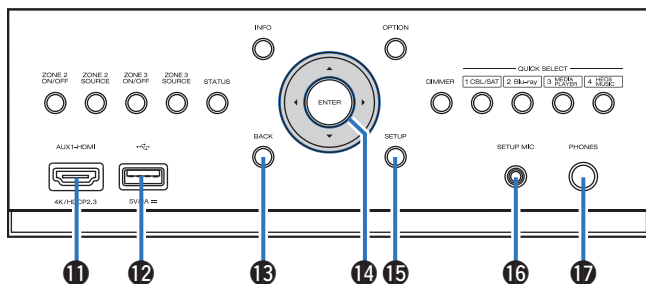
### 9 DIMMER button

Each press of this switches the brightness of the display. (👉 p. 266)

### 10 QUICK SELECT buttons

With a single press of any of these buttons, you can call up various settings you've registered to each button such as the input source, volume level and sound mode settings. (👉 p. 160)





### 11 AUX1-HDMI connector

This is used to connect HDMI output compatible devices such as video camcorders and game consoles. (👉 p. 91)

### 12 USB port (👉)

This is used to connect USB storages (such as USB memory devices). (👉 p. 94)

### 13 BACK button

This returns to the previous screen.

### 14 ENTER button

This determines the selection.

### 15 SETUP button

This displays the menu on the TV screen. (👉 p. 179)

### 16 SETUP MIC jack

This is used to connect the supplied Sound calibration microphone. (👉 p. 220)

### 17 Headphones jack (PHONES)

This is used to connect headphones.

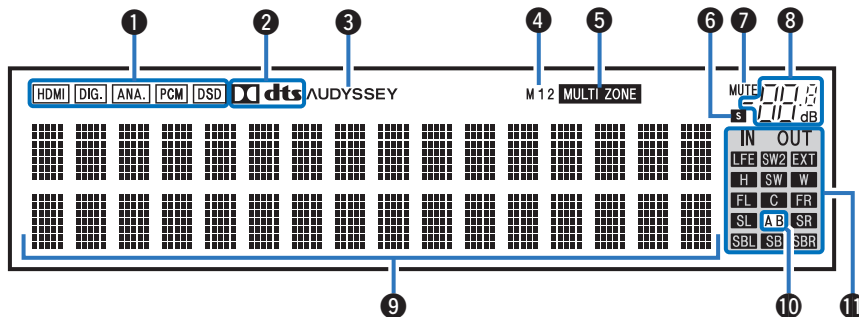
When the headphones are plugged into this jack, audio will no longer be output from the connected speakers or from the PRE OUT connectors.

#### NOTE

- To prevent hearing loss, do not raise the volume level excessively when using headphones.



## Display



### 1 Input signal indicators

These light according to the audio input mode settings of each input source. (👉 p. 216)

### 2 Decoder indicators

These light when Dolby or DTS signals are input or when the Dolby or DTS decoder is running.

### 3 Audyssey® indicator

This lights when “MultEQ® XT32”, “Dynamic EQ”, “Dynamic Volume” or “Audyssey LFC™” has been set up. (👉 p. 192)

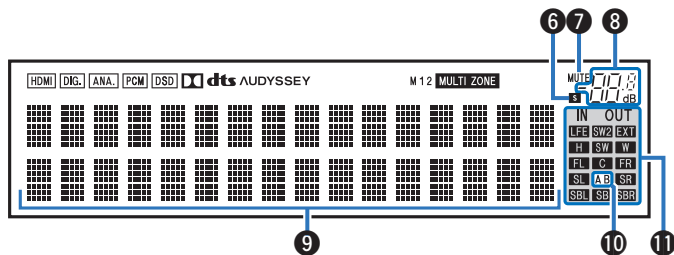
### 4 Monitor output indicator

These light according to the HDMI monitor output setting. When set to “Auto(Dual)”, the indicators light according to connection status.

### 5 MULTI ZONE indicator

This lights up when ZONE2 or ZONE3 (another room) power is turned on. (👉 p. 173)





### 6 Sleep timer indicator

This lights when the sleep mode is selected. (🔗 p. 158)

### 7 MUTE indicator

This blinks while the sound is muted. (🔗 p. 102)

### 8 Volume indicator

### 9 Information display

The input source name, sound mode, setting values and other information are displayed here.

### 10 Front speaker indicator

This lights according to the setting of the front A and B speakers.

### 11 Input/output signal channel indicators

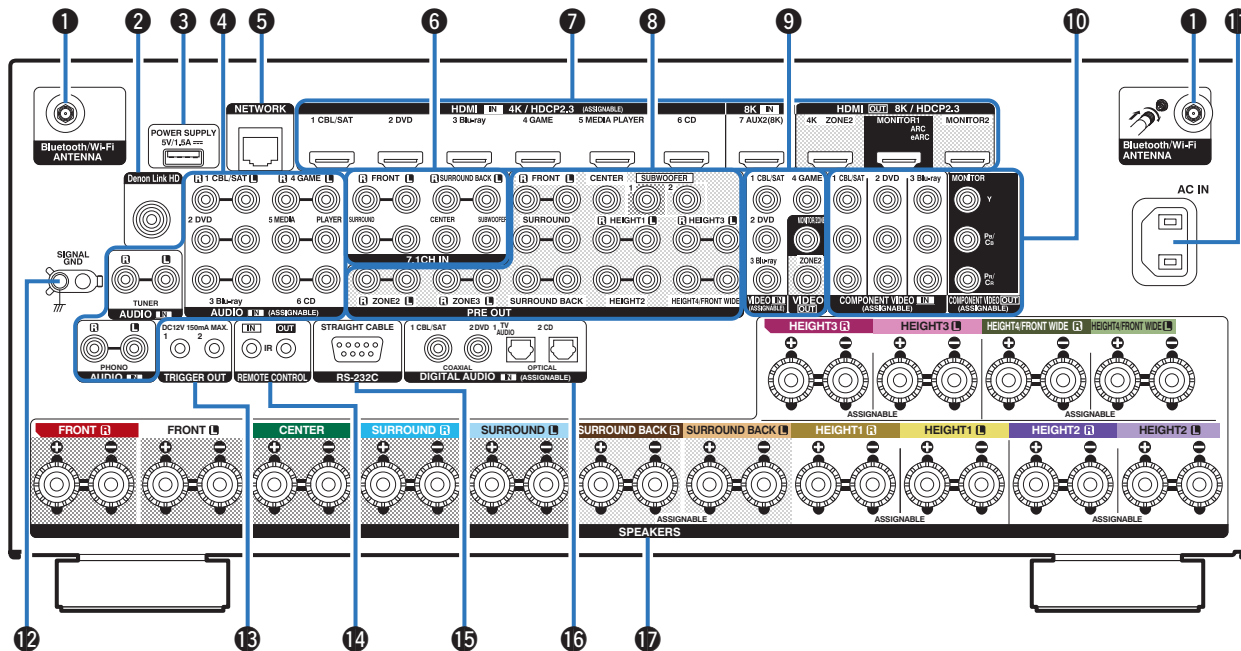
The channel for input/output signals is displayed according to the setting configured for “Channel Indicators”. (🔗 p. 267)

- When “Channel Indicators” is set to “Output” (Default)  
These light when audio signals are being output from the speakers.
- When “Channel Indicators” is set to “Input”  
These light corresponding to the channels that include the input signals.

When playing HD Audio sources, the **EXT** indicator lights when a signal from an extension channel (a channel other than the front, center, surround, surround back, front height, front wide or LFE channel) is input.



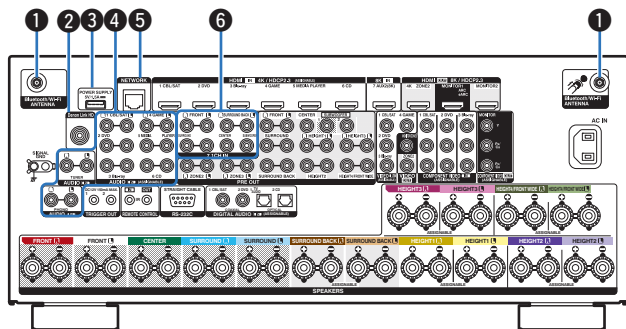
# Rear panel



For details, see the next page.



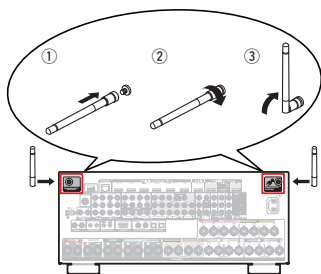




### 1 Bluetooth/wireless LAN antenna connectors

Used to connect the included external antennas for Bluetooth/wireless connectivity when connecting to a network via wireless LAN, or when connecting to a handheld device via Bluetooth. (☞ p. 96)

- ① Place the external antennas for Bluetooth/wireless connectivity evenly over the screw terminal of rear.
- ② Turn clockwise until the antennas is fully connected.
- ③ Rotate the antenna upwards for best reception.



### 2 Denon Link HD connector

Used to connect a Denon Link HD compatible Blu-ray Disc player. (☞ p. 89)

### 3 USB port (POWER SUPPLY)

Can be used to power streaming media players, etc.



- Use a device's supplied AC adapter when a power supply of 5 V/1.5 A or more is required.
- Connect to the USB port on the front panel to play content from a USB memory device.

### 4 Analog audio connectors (AUDIO)

Used to connect devices equipped with analog audio connectors.

- “Connecting a set-top box (Satellite tuner/cable TV)” (☞ p. 87)
- “Connecting a DVD player or Blu-ray Disc player” (☞ p. 88)
- “Connecting a turntable” (☞ p. 92)

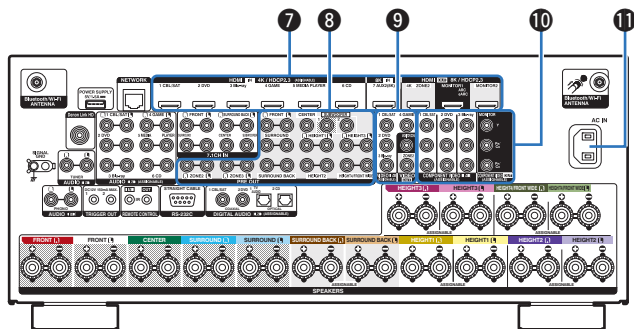
### 5 NETWORK connector

Used to connect to a LAN cable when connecting to a wired LAN network. (☞ p. 95)

### 6 7.1-channel input connectors (7.1CH IN)

Used to connect to a device that has multi-channel audio output connectors. (☞ p. 93)





### 7 HDMI connectors

Used to connect devices equipped with HDMI connectors.

- “Connection 1 : TV equipped with an HDMI connector and compatible with the ARC (Audio Return Channel) / eARC (Enhanced Audio Return Channel)” (☞ p. 83)
- “Connection 2 : TV equipped with an HDMI connector and incompatible with the ARC (Audio Return Channel) / eARC (Enhanced Audio Return Channel)” (☞ p. 84)
- “Connecting a set-top box (Satellite tuner/cable TV)” (☞ p. 87)
- “Connecting a DVD player or Blu-ray Disc player” (☞ p. 88)
- “Connecting a Blu-ray Disc player compatible with the Denon Link HD function” (☞ p. 89)
- “Connecting a player device compatible with the 8K” (☞ p. 90)

### 8 PRE OUT connectors

Used to connect a subwoofer with built-in amplifier or an external power amplifier.

- “Connecting the subwoofer” (☞ p. 43)
- “Connecting an external power amplifier” (☞ p. 81)
- “Connecting ZONE” (☞ p. 168)

### 9 Video connectors (VIDEO)

Used to connect devices equipped with video connectors.

- “Connection 3 : TV equipped without an HDMI connector” (☞ p. 85)
- “Connecting a set-top box (Satellite tuner/cable TV)” (☞ p. 87)
- “Connecting a DVD player or Blu-ray Disc player” (☞ p. 88)

### 10 Component video connectors (COMPONENT VIDEO)

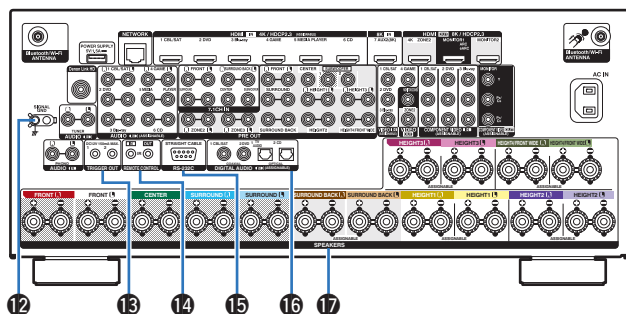
Used to connect devices equipped with component video connectors.

- “Connection 3 : TV equipped without an HDMI connector” (☞ p. 85)
- “Connecting a set-top box (Satellite tuner/cable TV)” (☞ p. 87)
- “Connecting a DVD player or Blu-ray Disc player” (☞ p. 88)

### 11 AC inlet (AC IN)

Used to connect the power cord. (☞ p. 99)





#### 12 SIGNAL GND terminal

Used to connect a ground wire for the turntable. (☞ p. 92)

#### 13 TRIGGER OUT jacks

Used to connect devices equipped with the trigger function. (☞ p. 98)

#### 14 REMOTE CONTROL jacks

Used to connect infrared receivers/transmitters in order to operate this unit and external devices from a different room. (☞ p. 97)

#### 15 RS-232C connector

Used to connect home automation controller devices fitted with RS-232C connectors. Consult the owner's manual of the home automation controller for more information about serial control of this unit.

Perform the operation below beforehand.

- ① Turn on the power of this unit.
- ② Turn off the power of this unit from the external controller.
- ③ Check that the unit is in the standby mode.

#### 16 Digital audio connectors (DIGITAL AUDIO)

Used to connect devices equipped with digital audio connectors.

- "Connection 2 : TV equipped with an HDMI connector and incompatible with the ARC (Audio Return Channel) / eARC (Enhanced Audio Return Channel)" (☞ p. 84)
- "Connection 3 : TV equipped without an HDMI connector" (☞ p. 85)
- "Connecting a set-top box (Satellite tuner/cable TV)" (☞ p. 87)
- "Connecting a DVD player or Blu-ray Disc player" (☞ p. 88)

#### 17 Speaker terminals (SPEAKERS)

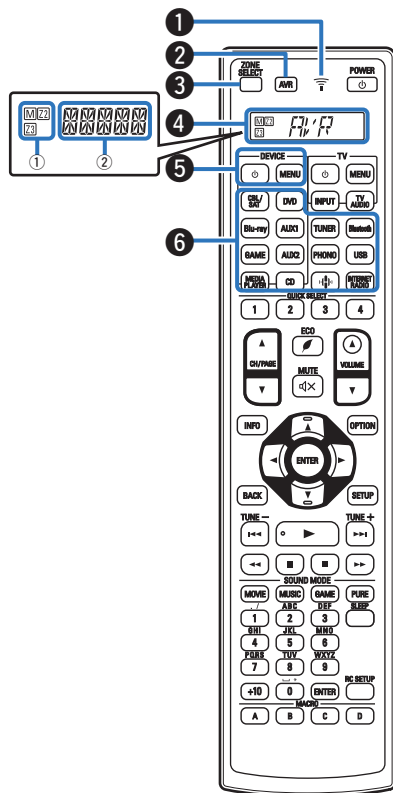
Used to connect speakers. (☞ p. 42)

#### NOTE

- Do not touch the inner pins of the connectors on the rear panel. Electrostatic discharge may cause permanent damage to the unit.



## Remote control unit



### 1 indicator

This is lit when signals are sent from the remote control unit.

### 2 **AVR operation button**

When preset codes are registered to the remote control unit, press this button and then operate the menu on the unit.

### 3 **Zone select button (ZONE SELECT)**

These switch the zone (MAIN ZONE, ZONE2, ZONE3) that is operated through the remote control unit. (☞ p. 173, 179)

### 4 **Display**

① Zone select indicators

② Information indicator

- This displays “AVR” when operating this unit.
- This displays the input source name when operating an external device.
- This displays “TV” when operating TV.
- This displays details about the setting on the remote control unit.

### 5 **Device operation buttons (DEVICE / DEVICE MENU)**

These turn the power of external devices on/off and call up menus. Preset codes need to be registered in order to use these buttons.

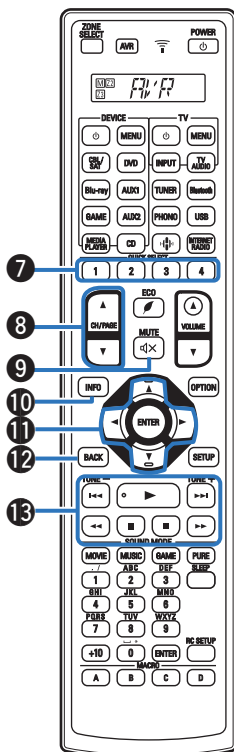
(☞ p. 274)

### 6 **Input source select buttons**

These select the input source.

- “Selecting the input source” (☞ p. 101)
- “Playback in ZONE2/ZONE3” (☞ p. 173)





### 7 QUICK SELECT buttons (1 – 4)

These call up settings registered to each button, such as input source, volume level and sound mode settings. (☞ p. 160)

### 8 Channel/page search buttons (CH/PAGE ▲▼)

These switch pages. (☞ p. 113)

### 9 MUTE button (🔇)

This mutes the output audio.

- “Turning off the sound temporarily (Muting)” (☞ p. 102)
- “Turning off the sound temporarily (Muting) (ZONE2/ZONE3)” (☞ p. 174)

### 10 Information button (INFO)

This displays the status information on the TV screen. (☞ p. 271)

### 11 Cursor buttons (▲▼◀▶)

These select items.

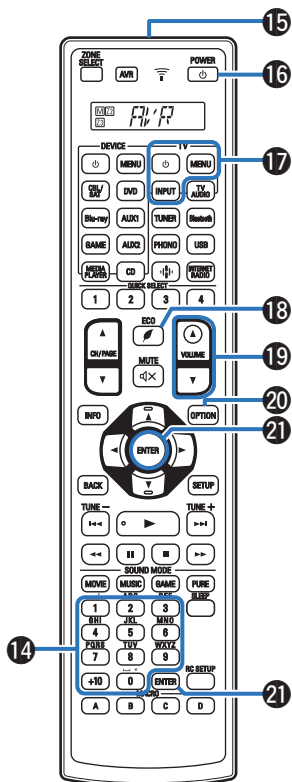
### 12 BACK button

This returns to the previous screen.

### 13 System buttons

These perform playback related operations.





#### 14 Number / Character buttons

These enter letters or numbers into the unit. (☞ p. 274)

#### 15 Remote control signal transmitter

This transmits signals from the remote control unit. (☞ p. 9)

#### 16 POWER button (⏻)

This turns the power on/off.

- “Turning the power on” (☞ p. 101)
- “Playback in ZONE2/ZONE3” (☞ p. 173)

#### 17 TV operation buttons (TV ⏻ / TV MENU / TV INPUT)

These turn the TV power on/off, switch the TV input and call up menus. Preset codes need to be registered in order to use these buttons. (☞ p. 279)

#### 18 ECO Mode button (🌿)

This switches to ECO Mode. (☞ p. 259)

#### 19 VOLUME buttons (▲▼)

These adjust the volume level.

- “Adjusting the volume” (☞ p. 102)
- “Adjusting the volume (ZONE2/ZONE3)” (☞ p. 174)

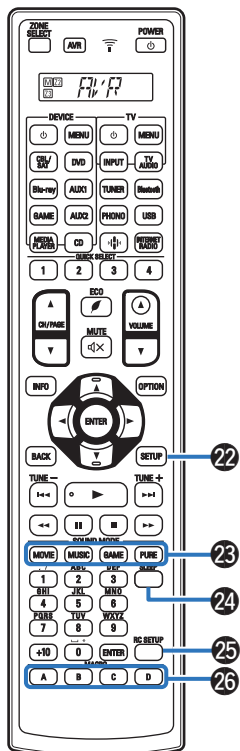
#### 20 OPTION button

This displays the option menu on the TV screen.

#### 21 ENTER button

This determines the selection.





## 22 SETUP button

This displays the menu on the TV screen. (☞ p. 179)

## 23 SOUND MODE buttons

These select the sound mode. (☞ p. 139)

## 24 SLEEP button

This sets the sleep timer. (☞ p. 158)

## 25 RC SETUP button

This used to set up the remote control unit. (☞ p. 274 – 290)

## 26 MACRO buttons (A – D)

These are used to turn on a TV or player, and consecutive series of operations can be registered to each button. (☞ p. 284)



## ■ Contents




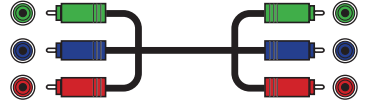





Speaker installation	33
Connecting speakers	42
Connecting a TV	82
Connecting a playback device	86
Connecting a USB memory device to the USB port	94
Connecting to a home network (LAN)	95
Connecting an external control device	97
Connecting the power cord	99

### NOTE

- Do not plug in the power cord until all connections have been completed. However, when the "Setup Assistant" is running, follow the instructions in the "Setup Assistant" (page 9 in the separate "Quick Start Guide") screen for making connections. (During "Setup Assistant" operation, the input/output connectors do not conduct current.)
- Do not bundle power cords together with connection cables. Doing so can result in noise.

## ■ Cables used for connections

Provide necessary cables according to the devices you want to connect.

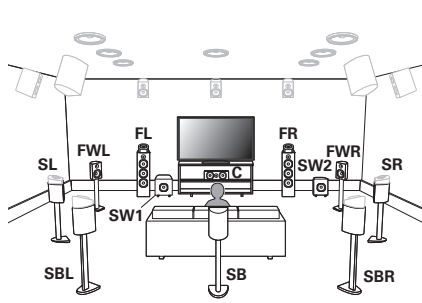
Speaker cable	
Subwoofer cable	
HDMI cable	
Component video cable	
Video cable	
Coaxial digital cable	
Optical cable	
Audio cable	
LAN cable	





## Speaker installation

Determine the speaker system depending on the number of speakers you are using and install each speaker and subwoofer in the room. Speaker installation is explained using this example of a typical installation.



### FL/FR

(Front speaker left/right):

Place the FRONT left and right speakers an equal distance from the main listening position. The distance between each speaker and your TV should also be the same.

### C

(Center speaker):

Place the CENTER speaker in between the front speakers and above or below your TV.

### SL/SR

(Surround speaker left/right):

Place the SURROUND left and right speakers an equal distance to the left and right sides of the main listening position. If you don't have surround back speakers, move the surround speakers slightly behind your listening position.

### SBL/SBR

(Surround back speaker left/right):

Place the SURROUND BACK left and right speakers an equal distance from the main listening position and directly behind the main listening position. When using a single surround back speaker (SB), place it directly behind the listening position.

### FWL/FWR

(Front wide speaker left/right):

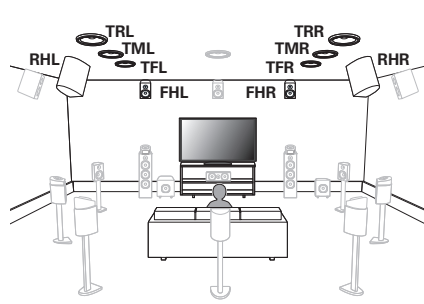
Place the FRONT WIDE left and right speakers outside of the front left and right speakers so that there is an equal distance between all front speakers.

### SW 1/2

(Subwoofer):

Place the SUBWOOFER at a convenient location near the front speakers. If you have two subwoofers, place them asymmetrically across the front of your room.





**FHL/FHR**  
(Front height speaker  
left/right):

Place the FRONT HEIGHT left and right speakers directly above the front speakers. Mount them as close to the ceiling as possible and aim them towards the main listening position.

**TFL/TFR**  
(Top front speaker  
left/right):

Mount the TOP FRONT left and right speakers on the ceiling slightly in front of your main listening position and aligned with the left and right front speakers.

**TML/TMR**  
(Top middle speaker  
left/right):

Mount the TOP MIDDLE left and right speakers directly above the main listening position and aligned with the left and right front speakers.

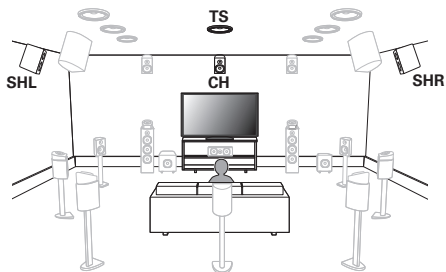
**TRL/TRR**  
(Top rear speaker  
left/right):

Mount the TOP REAR left and right speakers on the ceiling slightly behind your main listening position and aligned with the left and right front speakers.

**RHL/RHR**  
(Rear height speaker  
left/right):

Place the REAR HEIGHT left and right speakers directly behind the main listening position. Mount them as close to the ceiling as possible and aligned with the left and right front speakers.



**SHL/SHR**

(Surround height speaker left/right):

Place the SURROUND HEIGHT left and right speakers directly above the surround speakers.

**CH**

(Center height speaker):

Place the CENTER HEIGHT speaker directly above the center speaker. Mount them as close to the ceiling as possible and aim them towards the main listening position.

**TS**

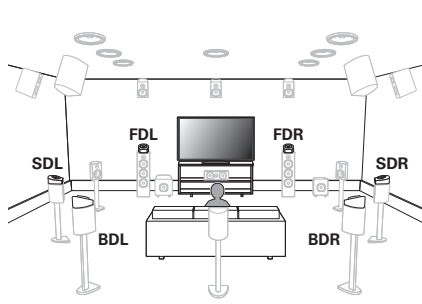
(Top surround speaker):

Place the TOP SURROUND speaker directly above the main listening position and aligned with the center channel speaker.



- For the best Auro-3D experience Surround Height speakers are recommended, however you may substitute Rear Height speakers from a Dolby Atmos speaker setup in place of Surround Height speakers.





**FDL/FDR**  
(Front Dolby speaker  
left/right):

Place the FRONT Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker on the front speaker. For a Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker integrated with a front speaker, place the Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker instead of the front speaker.

**SDL/SDR**  
(Surround Dolby  
speaker left/right):

Place the SURROUND Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker on the surround speaker. For a Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker integrated with a surround speaker, place the Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker instead of the surround speaker.

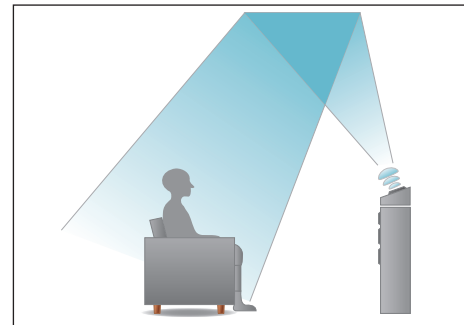
**BDL/BDR**  
(Back Dolby speaker  
left/right):

Place the BACK Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker on the surround back speaker. For a Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker integrated with a surround back speaker, place the Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker instead of the surround back speaker.

### About Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers

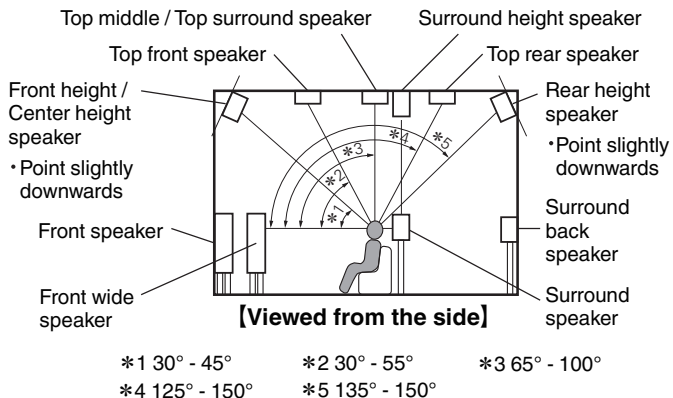
Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers reflect the sound off the ceiling to allow the sound to come from over your head by using a special upward-pointing speaker that is placed on the floor.

You can enjoy the Dolby Atmos 3D sound even in an environment where speakers cannot be installed on the ceiling.

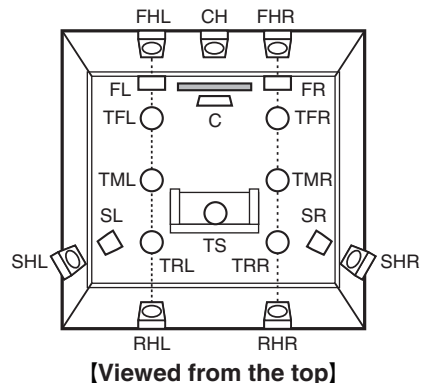




- This unit is compatible with Dolby Atmos and DTS:X which offers an even wider and deeper surround sensation.
- The “Speaker Virtualizer” must be set to “On” for Dolby Atmos playback with 5.1 channel speaker configurations or less. (p. 183)
- IMAX DTS:X / DTS:X can be selected regardless of the speaker configuration.
- Auro-3D recommends adding FRONT HEIGHT and SURROUND HEIGHT speakers to a 5.1 speaker configuration. Optionally, you may substitute REAR HEIGHT, Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers instead of FRONT HEIGHT and SURROUND HEIGHT speakers for Dolby Atmos, DTS:X and Auro-3D playback.
- Use the illustration below as a guide for how high each speaker should be installed. The height does not need to be exactly the same.



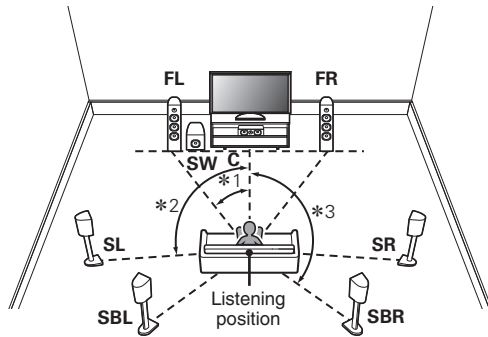
### Height speakers layout



- For the best Auro-3D experience Surround Height speakers are recommended, however you may substitute Rear Height speakers from a Dolby Atmos speaker setup in place of Surround Height speakers.

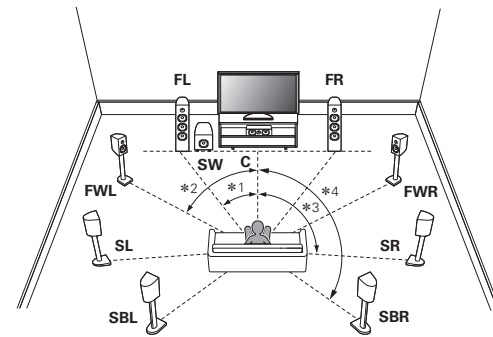


■ When 7.1-channel speakers are installed using surround back speakers



\*1 22° - 30° \*2 90° - 110° \*3 135° - 150°

■ When 9.1-channel speakers are installed using front wide speakers



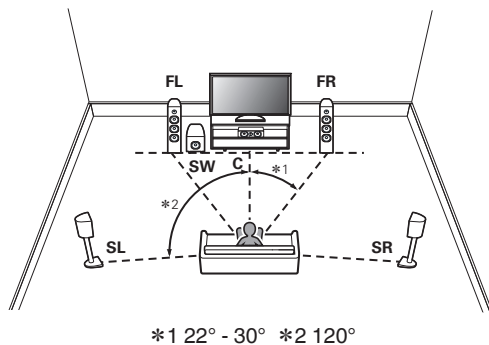
\*1 22° - 30° \*2 50° - 70° \*3 90° - 110° \*4 135° - 150°



- When using a single surround back speaker, place it directly behind the listening position.



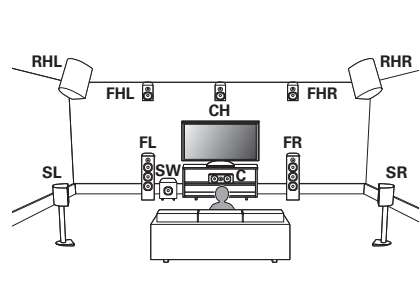
■ When 5.1-channel speakers are installed



■ Layout including height speakers and ceiling speakers

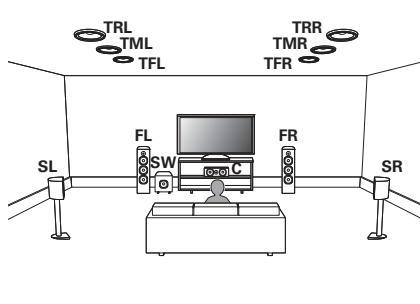
□ Height speaker layout example

Combination of 5.1-channel layout and front height/rear height/center height speakers.



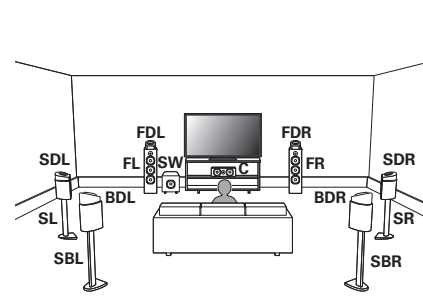
### ❑ Ceiling speaker layout example

Combination of 5.1-channel layout and top front/top middle/top rear speakers.



### ❑ Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker layout example

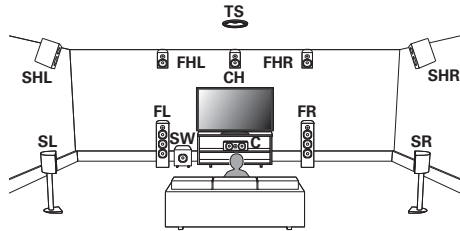
Combination of 7.1-channel layout and front Dolby/surround Dolby/back Dolby speakers.





## ❑ Auro-3D layout example

Combination of 5.1-channel speakers with front height/surround height/  
center height/top surround speakers.



- For the best Auro-3D experience Surround Height speakers are recommended, however you may substitute Rear Height speakers from a Dolby Atmos speaker setup in place of Surround Height speakers.



# Connecting speakers

Here we connect the speakers in the room to this unit.

## Before connecting speakers

### NOTE

- Disconnect this unit's power plug from the power outlet before connecting the speakers. Also, turn off the subwoofer.
- Connect so that the speaker cable core wires do not protrude from the speaker terminal. The protection circuit may be activated if the core wires touch the rear panel or if the + and - sides touch each other. ("Protection circuit" (🔧 p. 336))
- Never touch the speaker terminals while the power cord is connected. Doing so could result in electric shock. When the "Setup Assistant" (page 9 in the separate "Quick Start Guide") is running, follow the instructions in the "Setup Assistant" screen for making connections. (Power is not supplied to the speaker terminals while the "Setup Assistant" is running.)
- Use speakers with an impedance of 4 – 16  $\Omega$ /ohms.

### NOTE

- Carry out the following settings when using a speaker with an impedance of 4 – 6  $\Omega$ /ohms.

1. Press and hold the main unit's STATUS and ZONE3 SOURCE at the same time for at least 3 seconds.

"\*Video Format <PAL>" appears on the display.

2. Use  $\Delta$  or  $\nabla$  on the main unit three times.

"\*Sp. Impedance <8ohms>" appears on the display.

3. Use  $\langle$  or  $\rangle$  on the main unit to select the impedance.

---

**8ohms**  
(Default): Select when the impedance for all of the connected speakers is 8  $\Omega$ /ohms or over.

---

**6ohms:** Select when the impedance for any of the connected speakers is 6  $\Omega$ /ohms.

---

**4ohms:** Select when the impedance for any of the connected speakers is 4  $\Omega$ /ohms.

---

4. Press the main unit's ENTER to complete the setting.



## ■ Connecting the speaker cables

Carefully check the left (L) and right (R) channels and + (red) and – (black) polarities on the speakers being connected to this unit, and be sure to connect the channels and polarities correctly.

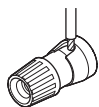
- 1 Peel off about 10 mm of sheathing from the tip of the speaker cable, then either twist the core wire tightly or terminate it.



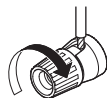
- 2 Turn the speaker terminal counterclockwise to loosen it.



- 3 Insert the speaker cable's core wire to the hilt into the speaker terminal.



- 4 Turn the speaker terminal clockwise to tighten it.

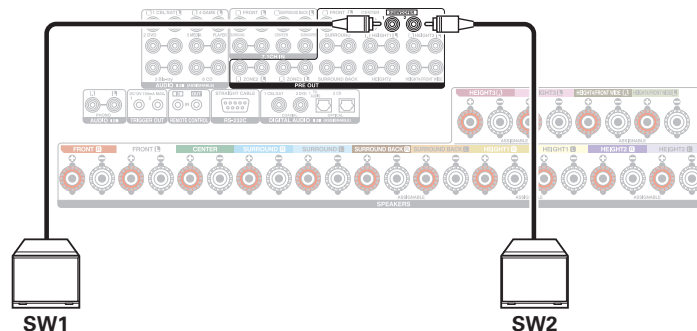


## ■ Connecting the subwoofer

Use a subwoofer cable to connect the subwoofer. Two subwoofers can be connected to this unit.

To use two subwoofers, set “Subwoofer” to “2 spkrs” in the “Speaker Config.” setting. (👉 p. 238)

The level and distance can be set separately for Subwoofer 1 and Subwoofer 2.



## ■ About the cable labels (supplied) for channel identification

The channel display section for speaker terminals on the rear panel is color-coded for each channel to be identifiable.

Attach the cable label corresponding to each speaker to each speaker cable.

This makes it easy to connect the correct cable to the speaker terminals on the rear panel.

Speaker	Color
FRONT L	White
FRONT R	Red
CENTER	Green
SURROUND L	Light Blue
SURROUND R	Blue
SURROUND BACK L	Beige
SURROUND BACK R	Brown
FRONT WIDE L	Glass Green
FRONT WIDE R	Olive Green
FRONT HEIGHT L	Light Yellow
FRONT HEIGHT R	Yellow
TOP FRONT L	Light Yellow
TOP FRONT R	Yellow
TOP MIDDLE L	Pink
TOP MIDDLE R	Magenta
TOP REAR L	Light Purple
TOP REAR R	Purple

Speaker	Color
SURROUND HEIGHT L	Pink
SURROUND HEIGHT R	Magenta
REAR HEIGHT L	Light Purple
REAR HEIGHT R	Purple
TOP SURROUND	Glass Green
CENTER HEIGHT	Olive Green
FRONT DOLBY L	Light Yellow
FRONT DOLBY R	Yellow
SURROUND DOLBY L	Pink
SURROUND DOLBY R	Magenta
BACK DOLBY L	Light Purple
BACK DOLBY R	Purple
SUBWOOFER 1	Black
SUBWOOFER 2	Black

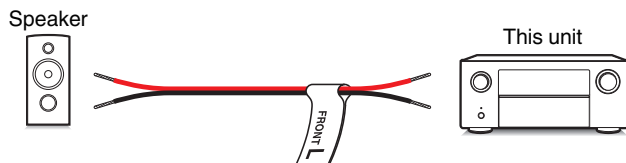


Attach the cable label for each channel to its speaker cable as shown in the diagram.

Refer to the table and attach the label to each speaker cable.

Then, make connection so that the color of the speaker terminal matches that of the cable label.

**[ How to attach the cable labels ]**



## Speaker configuration and “Amp Assign” settings

This unit has a built-in 13-channel power amplifier. In addition to the basic 5.1-channel system, a variety of speaker systems can be configured by changing the “Amp Assign” settings to suit the application, such as 7.1-channel systems, bi-amp connections and 2-channel systems for multi-zone playback. (🔍 p. 228)

Perform “Amp Assign” settings to suit the number of rooms and speaker configuration to be installed. (🔍 p. 228)

Playback speaker in each zone			“Amp Assign” settings	Connection page		
MAIN ZONE	ZONE2	ZONE3				
5.1-channel playback	2-channel (Pre-out)	2-channel (Pre-out)	Can be set in all “Amp Assign” modes.	48		
7.1-channel playback			Can be set in all “Amp Assign” modes except for “5.1ch Full Bi-Amp”.	49		
9.1-channel playback			13.1ch	54		
13.1-channel playback			13.1ch (Default)	63		
13.1-channel playback (Dolby Atmos and Auro-3D)			11.1ch (Bi-Amp)	68		
11.1-channel playback (bi-amp connection of front speakers)			5.1ch Full Bi-Amp	74		
5.1-channel playback (bi-amp connection of front, center and surround speakers)			11.1ch + Front B	75		
Second front speakers			11.1ch + ZONE2	76		
11.1-channel playback			2-channel (Speaker out)	2-channel (Pre-out)	11.1ch + ZONE2	77
11.1-channel playback			2-channel (Pre-out)	2-channel (Speaker out)	11.1ch + ZONE3	77
9.1-channel playback (bi-amp connection of front speakers)	2-channel (Speaker out)	2-channel (Pre-out)	9.1ch (Bi-Amp) + ZONE2	78		
9.1-channel playback	2-channel (Speaker out)	2-channel (Speaker out)	9.1ch + ZONE2/3	79		
11.1-channel playback	1-channel (Speaker out)	1-channel (Speaker out)	11.1ch + ZONE2/3-MONO	80		
13.1-channel playback (using this unit as a pre amplifier)	Not used	Not used	Pre Amplifier	81		

The sound mode that can be selected varies according to the speaker configuration.

The following pages provide basic connection examples.

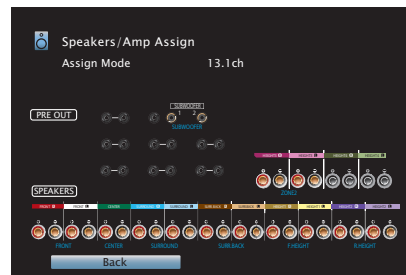


Refer to the example connection for “Example connection for the Auro-3D 9.1-channel system” (👉 p. 61) when playing Auro-3D with a 9.1-channel system using the basic 5.1-channel system and the front height and surround height speakers.

Also refer to the connection example for “Example connection for the Auro-3D 13.1-channel system” (👉 p. 67) when playing Auro-3D with a 13.1-channel system by adding the Surround Back, Top Surround and Center Height speakers.

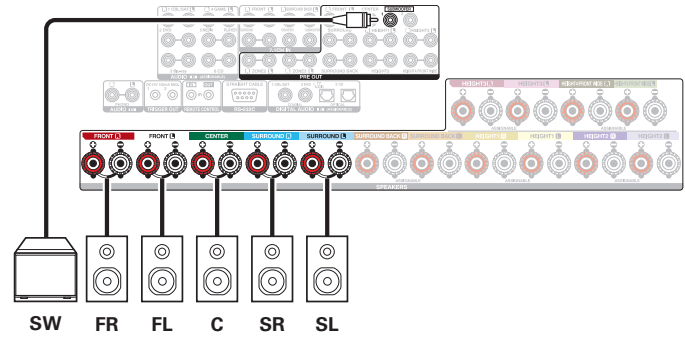
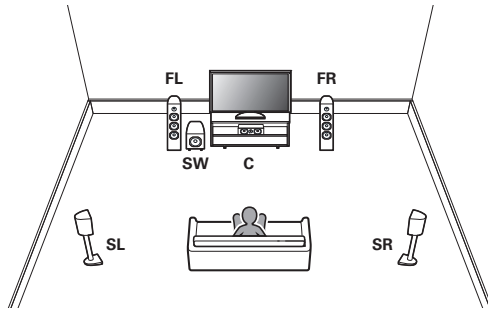


- In addition to the connections described in p. 48 - 80, this unit allows for various speaker connections with the “Amp Assign” setting. Also refer to the menu screen in “View Terminal Config.” on the “Amp Assign” setting screen, which shows how to make connections in your environment.



# Connecting 5.1-channel speakers

This serves as a basic 5.1-channel surround system.

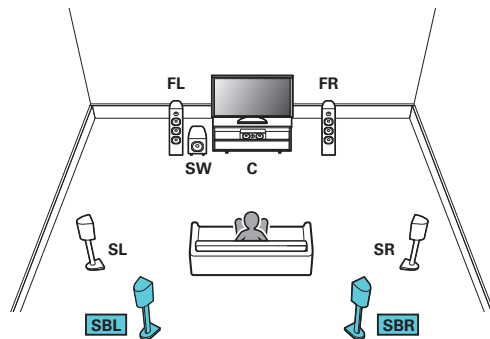




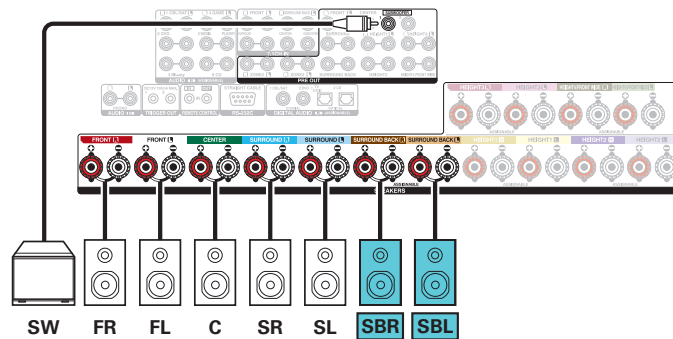
## Connecting 7.1-channel speakers

### ■ Example connections when using surround back speakers

This 7.1-channel surround system is the same as a basic 5.1-channel system but with surround back speakers.



- Set "Floor" - "Layout" to "5ch & SB" in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (🔑 p. 231)

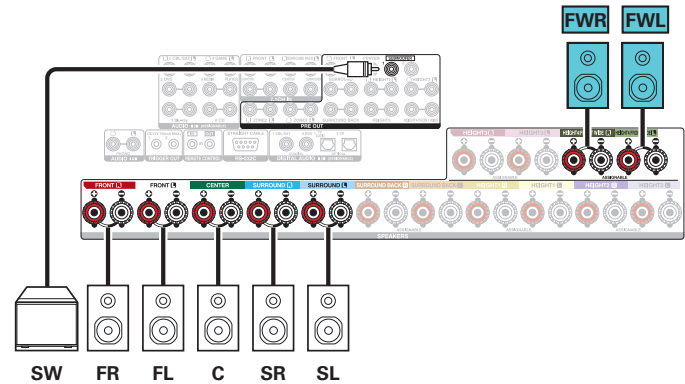
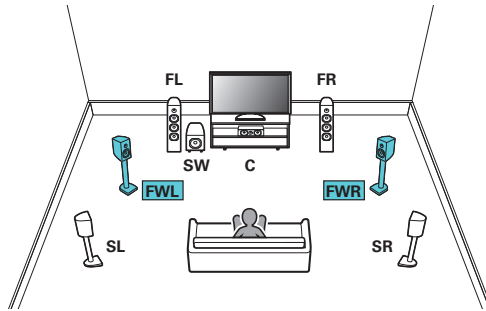


- When using a single surround back speaker, connect it to the SURROUND BACK L terminal.



## ■ Example connections when using front wide speakers

This 7.1-channel surround system is the same as a basic 5.1-channel system but with front wide speakers.

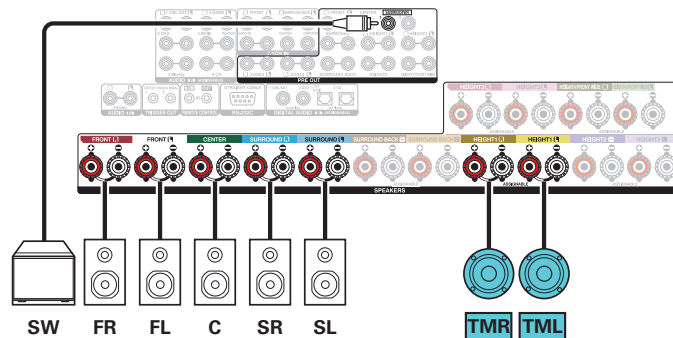
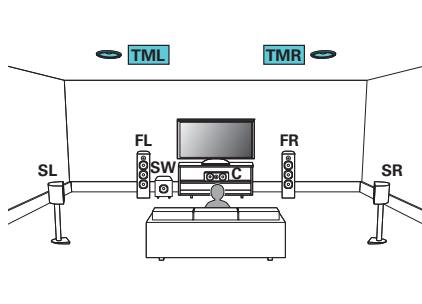


- Set "Floor" - "Layout" to "5ch & FW" in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (🔑 p. 231)



## ■ Example connections when using ceiling speakers

This 7.1-channel surround system is the same as a basic 5.1-channel system but with ceiling speakers.

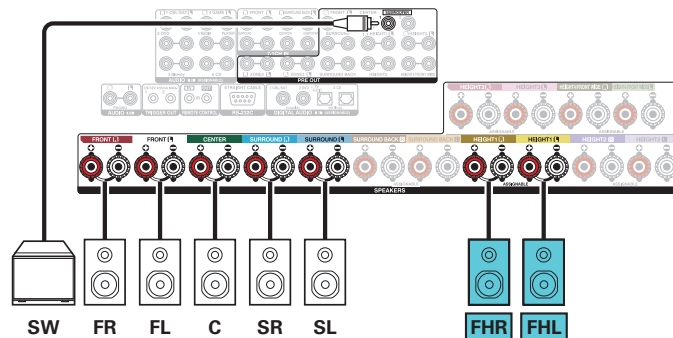
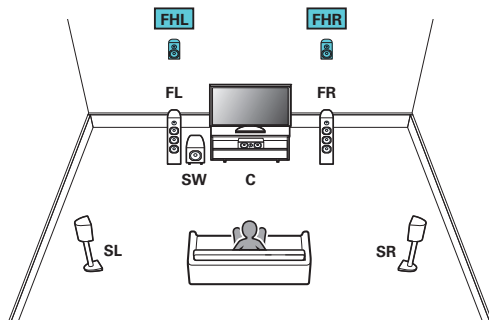


- Set "Floor" - "Layout" to "5ch" and "Height Sp" to "2ch" in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (🔍 p. 231)
- The top front or top rear speakers can be connected instead of the top middle speakers. In this case, set the ceiling speakers to be connected under "Height" - "Layout" in the menu. (🔍 p. 233)



## ■ Example connections when using height speakers

This 7.1-channel surround system is the same as a basic 5.1-channel system but with front height speakers.

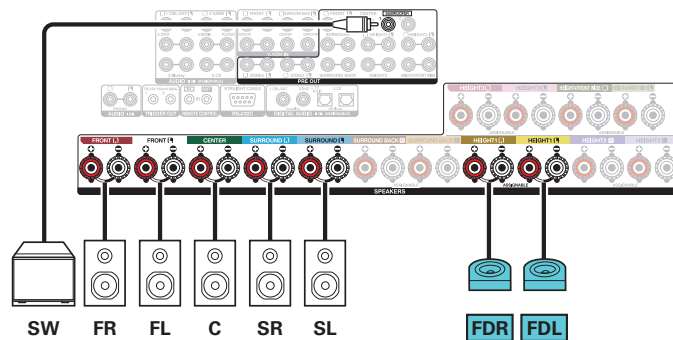
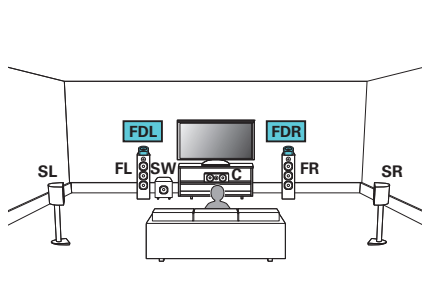


- Set "Floor" - "Layout" to "5ch" and "Height Sp" to "2ch" in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (🔑 p. 231)
- The rear height speakers can be connected instead of the front height speakers. In this case, set the height speakers to be connected under "Height" - "Layout" in the menu. (🔑 p. 233)



## ■ Example connections when using Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers

This 7.1-channel surround system is the same as a basic 5.1-channel system but with front Dolby speakers.

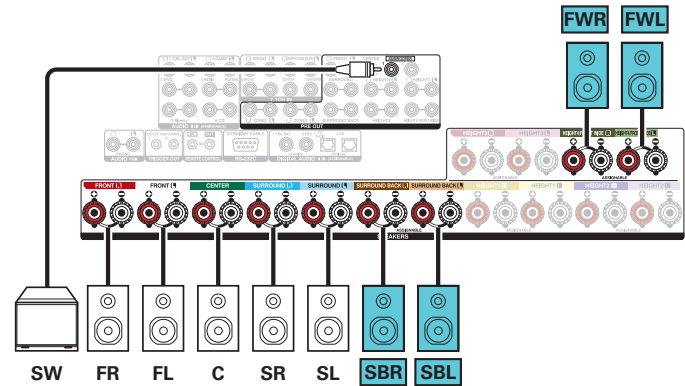
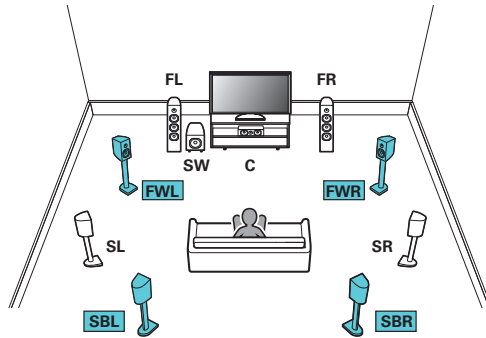


- Set “Floor” - “Layout” to “5ch” and “Dolby Sp” to “2ch” in the menu. (🔍 p. 231, 232)
- The surround Dolby speakers can be connected instead of the front Dolby speakers. In this case, set the Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers to be connected under “Height” - “Layout” in the menu. (🔍 p. 233)



# Connecting 9.1-channel speakers

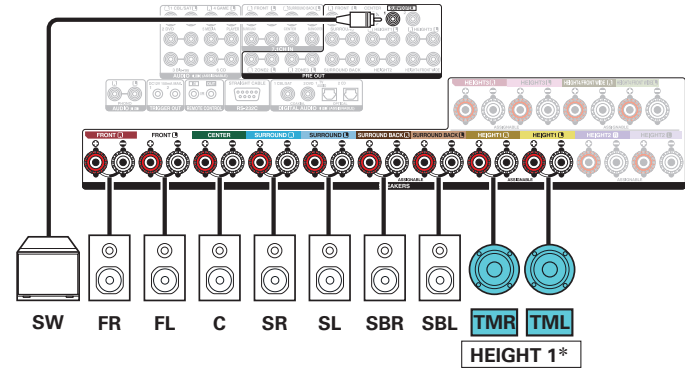
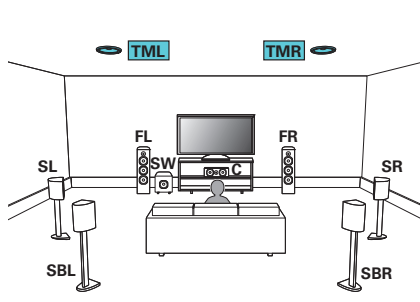
## ■ Example connection when using surround back and front wide speakers



- Set "Floor" - "Layout" to "5ch & SB & FW" in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (📖 p. 231)



## ■ Example connection when using one set of ceiling speakers

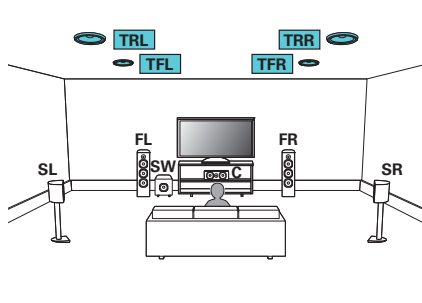


- Set "Floor" - "Layout" to "5ch & SB" and "Height Sp" to "2ch" in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (☞ p. 231)

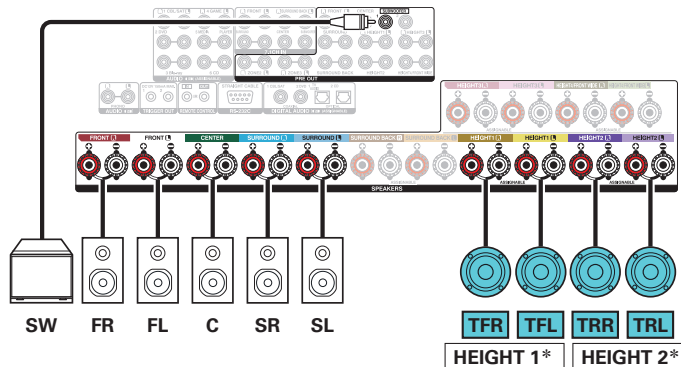
\* The top front or top rear speakers can be connected instead of the top middle speakers. In this case, set the ceiling speakers to be connected under "Height" - "Layout" in the menu. (☞ p. 233)



## ■ Example connection when using two sets of ceiling speakers



- Set "Floor" - "Layout" to "5ch" and "Height Sp" to "4ch" in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (🔗 p. 231)

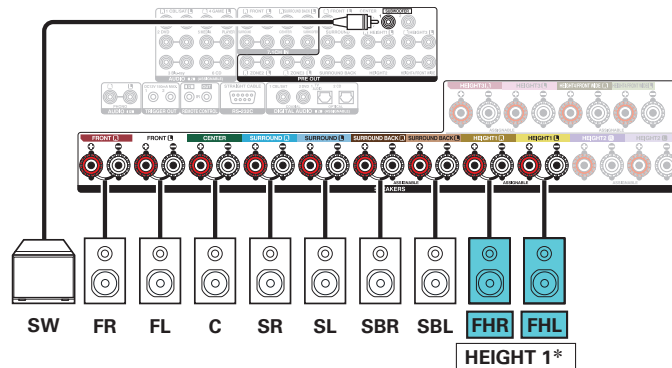
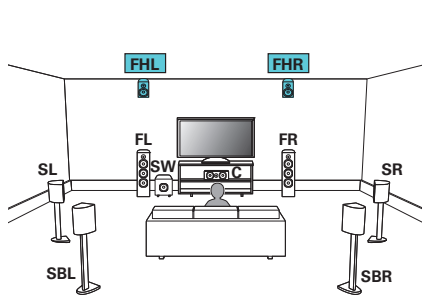


\* You can change the combination of the HEIGHT1 and HEIGHT2 channels in the settings. (🔗 p. 62)





■ Example connection when using one set of height speakers

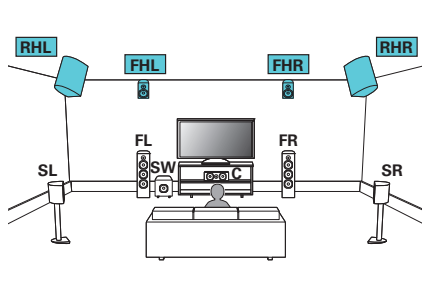


- Set "Floor" - "Layout" to "5ch & SB" and "Height Sp" to "2ch" in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (🔧 p. 231)

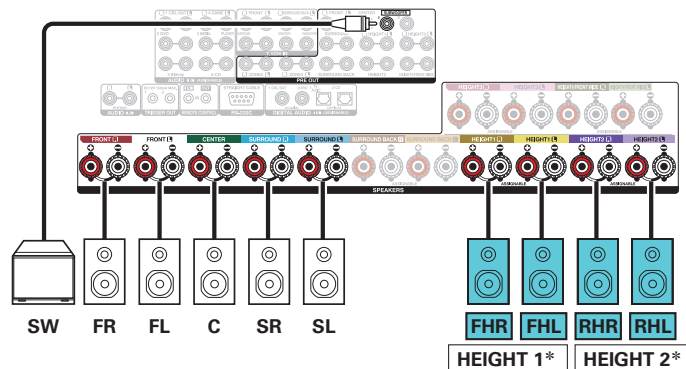
\* The rear height speakers can be connected instead of the front height speakers. In this case, set the height speakers to be connected under "Height" - "Layout" in the menu. (🔧 p. 233)



## ■ Example connection when using two sets of height speakers



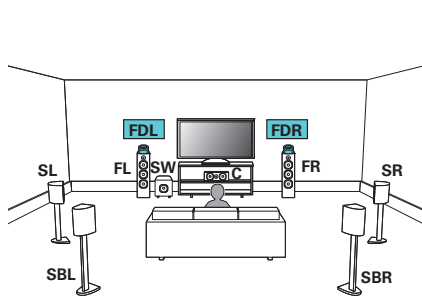
- Set "Floor" - "Layout" to "5ch" and "Height Sp" to "4ch" in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (🔧 p. 231)



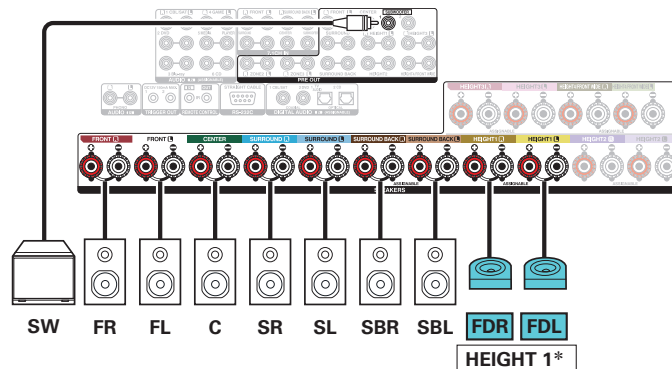
\* You can change the combination of the HEIGHT1 and HEIGHT2 channels in the settings. (🔧 p. 62)



## ■ Example connection when using one set of Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers



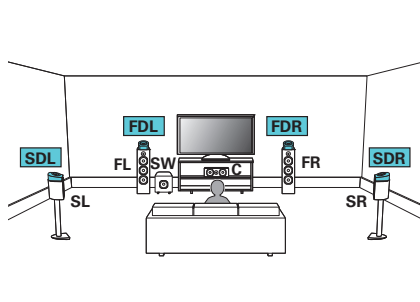
- Set "Floor" - "Layout" to "5ch & SB" and "Dolby Sp" to "2ch" in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (☞ p. 231, 232)



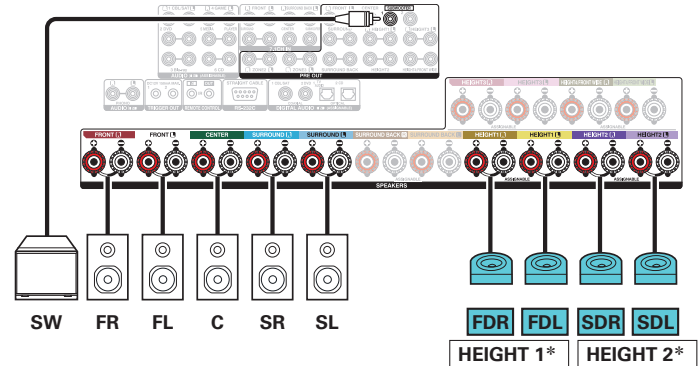
\* The surround Dolby or back Dolby speakers can be connected instead of the front Dolby speakers. In this case, set the Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers to be connected under "Height" - "Layout" in the menu. (☞ p. 233)



## ■ Example connection when using two sets of Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers



- Set "Floor" - "Layout" to "5ch" and "Dolby Sp" to "4ch" in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (📖 p. 231, 232)

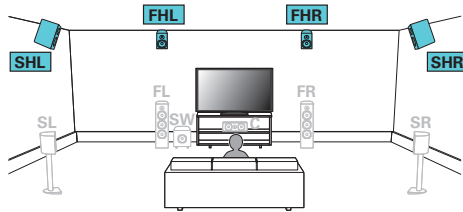


\* You can change the combination of the HEIGHT1 and HEIGHT2 channels in the settings. (📖 p. 62)

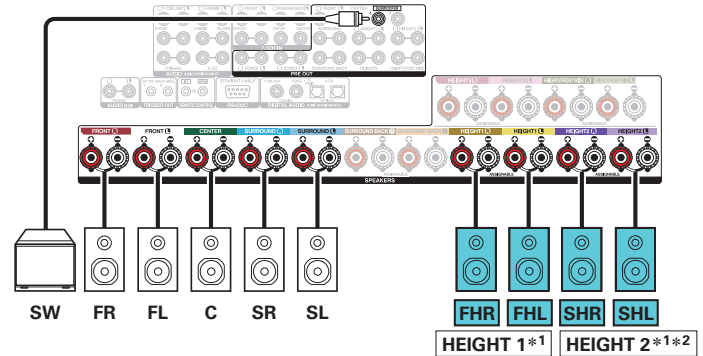


## ■ Example connection for the Auro-3D 9.1-channel system

This speaker configuration is optimized for Auro-3D playback.



- Set “Floor” - “Layout” to “5ch” and “Height Sp” to “4ch” in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (🔧 p. 231)  
Next, set “Height” - “Front Layout” to “Front Height” and “Rear Layout” to “Surr. Height”. (🔧 p. 234)



- \*1 You can change the combination of the HEIGHT1 and HEIGHT2 channels in the settings. (🔧 p. 62)
- \*2 For the best Auro-3D experience Surround Height speakers are recommended, however you may substitute Rear Height speakers in place of Surround Height speakers.



Channels output from the HEIGHT1 and HEIGHT2 speaker terminals can be changed to the following patterns according to the speaker systems being used.

Set this from “Amp Assign” in the menu. (🔧 p. 228)

Combination of height speakers to be used			Connected terminals	
Number of height/ceiling speakers	Number of Dolby Speakers	Combination pattern	HEIGHT1 SPEAKER	HEIGHT2 SPEAKER
2 speakers	None	Front Height	Front Height	-
		Top Front	Top Front	-
		Top Middle	Top Middle	-
		Top Rear	Top Rear	-
		Rear Height	Rear Height	-
None	2 speakers	Front Dolby	Front Dolby	-
		Surround Dolby	Surround Dolby	-
		Back Dolby	Back Dolby	-
4 speakers	None	Front Height & Top Middle	Front Height	Top Middle
		Front Height & Top Rear	Front Height	Top Rear
		Front Height & Rear Height *	Front Height	Rear Height
		Front Height & Surr. Height	Front Height	Surr. Height
		Top Front & Top Rear	Top Front	Top Rear
		Top Front & Rear Height	Top Front	Rear Height
		Top Middle & Rear Height	Top Middle	Rear Height
2 speakers	2 speakers	Front Dolby & Top Rear	Front Dolby	Top Rear
		Front Dolby & Rear Height	Front Dolby	Rear Height
		Front Height & Surr. Dolby	Front Height	Surround Dolby
		Top Front & Surr. Dolby	Top Front	Surround Dolby
None	4 speakers	Front Dolby & Surround Dolby	Front Dolby	Surround Dolby

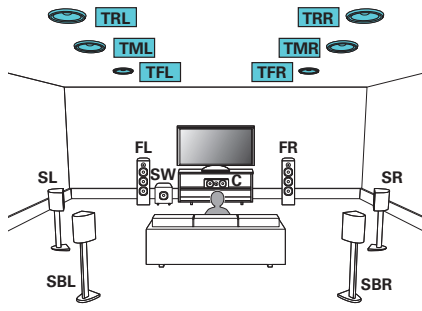
\* For the best Auro-3D experience Surround Height speakers are recommended, however you may substitute Rear Height speakers from a Dolby Atmos speaker setup in place of Surround Height speakers.



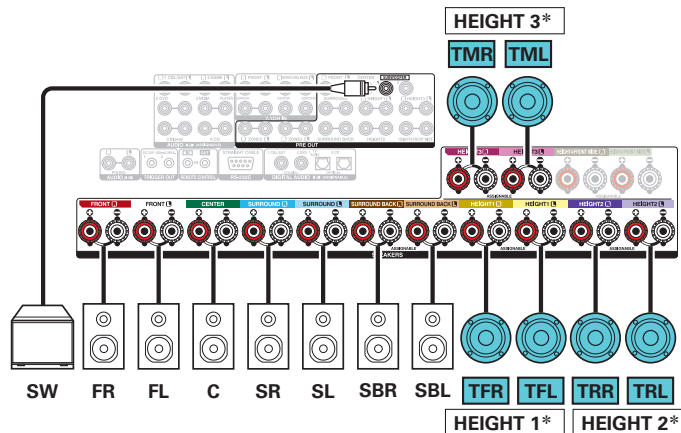
## Connecting 13.1-channel speakers

This system, which is based on a 5.1-channel system, plays back up to 13.1-channels at the same time.

### ■ Example connection when using three sets of ceiling speakers



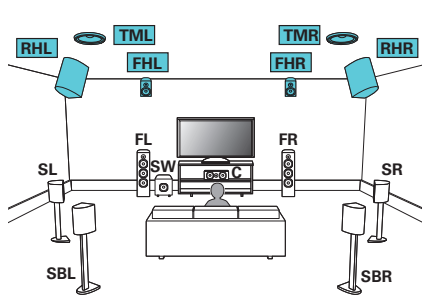
- Set "Floor" - "Layout" to "5ch & SB" and "Height Sp" to "6ch" in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (🔗 p. 231)



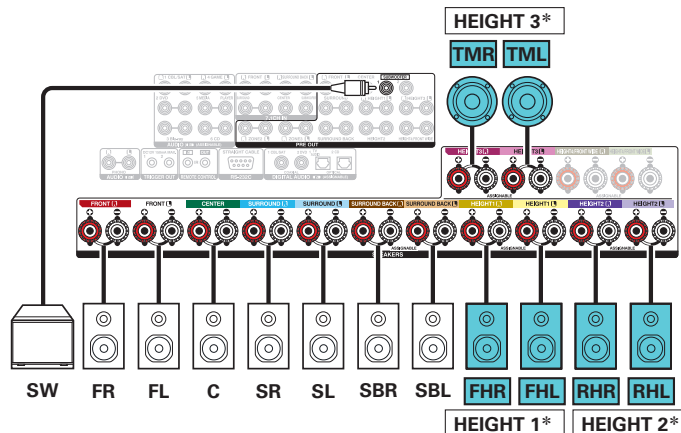
\* You can change the combination of the HEIGHT1, HEIGHT2 and HEIGHT3 channels in the settings. (🔗 p. 69)



■ Example connection when using two sets of height speakers and one set of ceiling speakers



- Set "Floor" - "Layout" to "5ch & SB" and "Height Sp" to "6ch" in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (☞ p. 231)

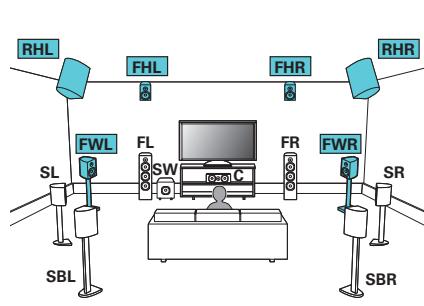


\* You can change the combination of the HEIGHT1, HEIGHT2 and HEIGHT3 channels in the settings. (☞ p. 69)

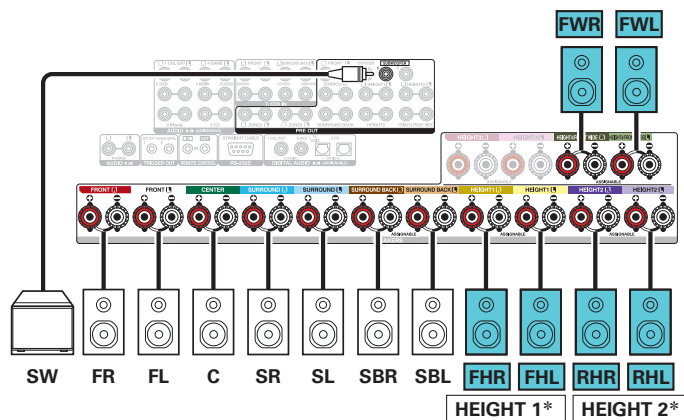




■ Example connection when using two sets of height speakers and one set of front wide speakers



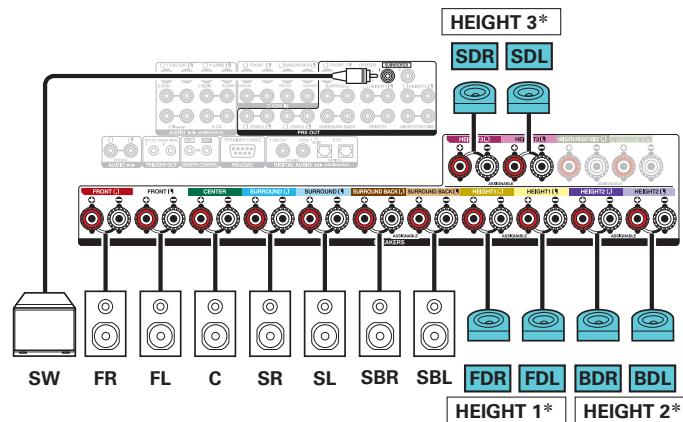
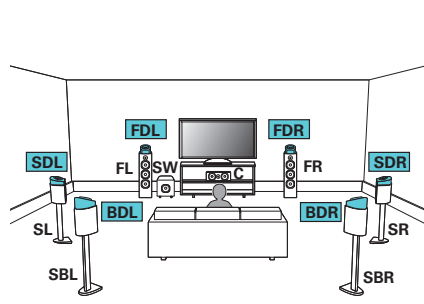
- Set "Floor" - "Layout" to "5ch & SB & FW" and "Height Sp" to "4ch" in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (📖 p. 231)



\* You can change the combination of the HEIGHT1 and HEIGHT2 channels in the settings. (📖 p. 69)



## ■ Example connection when using three sets of Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers



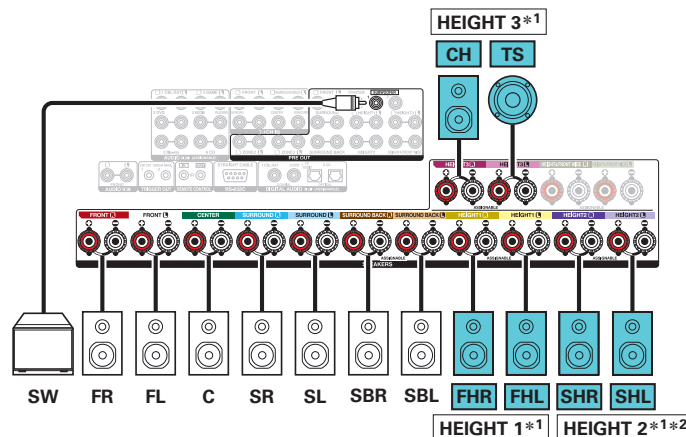
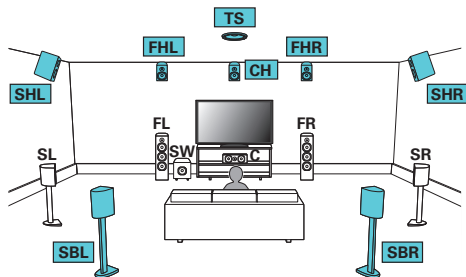
- Set "Floor" - "Layout" to "5ch & SB" and "Dolby Sp" to "6ch" in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (📖 p. 231, 232)

\* You can change the combination of the HEIGHT1, HEIGHT2 and HEIGHT3 channels in the settings. (📖 p. 69)



## ■ Example connection for the Auro-3D 13.1-channel system

This speaker configuration is optimized for Auro-3D playback.



- Set "Floor" - "Layout" to "5ch & SB" and "Height Sp" to "6ch" in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (🔗 p. 231)  
Next, set "Height" - "Front Layout" to "Front Height & Center Height" and "Middle Layout" to "Surr. Height & Top Surround". (🔗 p. 234)

\*1 You can change the combination of the HEIGHT1, HEIGHT2 and HEIGHT3 channels in the settings. (🔗 p. 69)

\*2 For the best Auro-3D experience Surround Height speakers are recommended, however you may substitute Rear Height speakers from a Dolby Atmos speaker setup in place of Surround Height speakers.



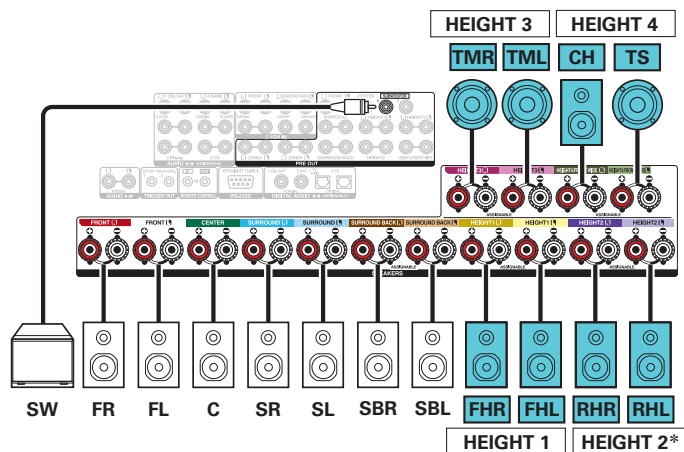
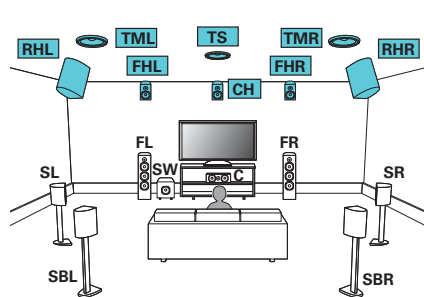
## Connecting 15.1-channel speakers

This system can connect with up to 15.1-channel speakers and simultaneously play up to 13.1-channels for Dolby Atmos and Auro-3D playback.

Use the Front Height, Top Middle or Rear Height speakers for Dolby Atmos playback.

Use the Front Height, Rear Height, Center Height or Top Surround speakers for Auro-3D playback.

### Example connection



- Set “Floor” - “Layout” to “5ch & SB” and “Height Sp” to “8ch” in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (☞ p. 231)

\* Use Surround Height speakers for optimal Auro-3D playback. Install Rear Height speakers instead of Surround Height speakers to enjoy both Auro-3D and Dolby Atmos with 13.1-channel playback.



The combination of the HEIGHT1, HEIGHT2, HEIGHT3 and HEIGHT4 channels can be changed to the following patterns according to the speaker system being used.

Set this from “Amp Assign” in the menu. (👉 p. 228)

Combinations of height speakers to be used				Connected speaker terminals			
	Number of height / ceiling speakers	Number of Dolby Speakers	Combination pattern	HEIGHT 1	HEIGHT 2	HEIGHT 3	HEIGHT 4/ FRONT WIDE*1
2ch	2ch	None	Front Height	Front Height	-	-	-
			Top Front	Top Front	-	-	-
			Top Middle	Top Middle	-	-	-
			Top Rear	Top Rear	-	-	-
			Rear Height	Rear Height	-	-	-
	None	2ch	Front Dolby	Front Dolby	-	-	-
			Surround Dolby	Surround Dolby	-	-	-
Back Dolby*2			Back Dolby	-	-	-	



Combinations of height speakers to be used				Connected speaker terminals			
	Number of height / ceiling speakers	Number of Dolby Speakers	Combination pattern	HEIGHT 1	HEIGHT 2	HEIGHT 3	HEIGHT 4 / FRONT WIDE*1
4ch	2ch	2ch	Front Dolby & Top Rear	Front Dolby	Top Rear	-	-
			Front Dolby & Rear Height	Front Dolby	Rear Height	-	-
			Front Height & Surr. Dolby	Front Height	Surround Dolby	-	-
			Front Height & Back Dolby*2	Front Height	Back Dolby	-	-
			Top Front & Surr. Dolby	Top Front	Surround Dolby	-	-
			Top Front & Back Dolby*2	Top Front	Back Dolby	-	-
	4ch	None	Front Height & Top Middle	Front Height	Top Middle	-	-
			Front Height & Top Rear	Front Height	Top Rear	-	-
			Front Height & Rear Height*3	Front Height	Rear Height	-	-
			Front Height & Surr. Height	Front Height	Surr. Height	-	-
			Top Front & Top Rear	Top Front	Top Rear	-	-
			Top Front & Rear Height	Top Front	Rear Height	-	-
	None	4ch	Top Middle & Rear Height	Top Middle	Rear Height	-	-
			Front Dolby & Surr. Dolby	Front Dolby	Surround Dolby	-	-
			Front Dolby & Back Dolby*2	Front Dolby	Back Dolby	-	-



Combinations of height speakers to be used				Connected speaker terminals			
	Number of height / ceiling speakers	Number of Dolby Speakers	Combination pattern	HEIGHT 1	HEIGHT 2	HEIGHT 3	HEIGHT 4/ FRONT WIDE*1
5ch	5ch	None	Front Height & Rear Height & Top Surround*3	Front Height	Rear Height	L: Top Surround	-
			Front Height & Surr. Height & Top Surround	Front Height	Surr. Height	L: Top Surround	-
			Front Height & Rear Height & Center Height*3	Front Height	Rear Height	R: Center Height	-
			Front Height & Surr. Height & Center Height	Front Height	Surr. Height	R: Center Height	-



Combinations of height speakers to be used				Connected speaker terminals			
Number of height / ceiling speakers	Number of Dolby Speakers	Combination pattern	HEIGHT 1	HEIGHT 2	HEIGHT 3	HEIGHT 4 / FRONT WIDE*1	
6ch	None	Front Height & Surr. Height & Rear Height*4	Front Height	Rear Height	Surr. Height	-	
		Front Height & Rear Height & Top Surround & Center Height*3	Front Height	Rear Height	L: Top Surround R: Center Height	-	
		Front Height & Surr. Height & Top Surround & Center Height	Front Height	Surr. Height	L: Top Surround R: Center Height	-	
		Front Height & Top Middle & Rear Height*3*5	Front Height	Rear Height	Top Middle	-	
		Top Front & Top Middle & Top Rear*5	Top Front	Top Rear	Top Middle	-	
	4ch	2ch	Front Height & Surr. Dolby & Rear Height*3	Front Height	Rear Height	Surround Dolby	-
			Top Front & Surr. Dolby & Top Rear	Top Front	Top Rear	Surround Dolby	-
	2ch	4ch	Front Height & Surr. Dolby & Back Dolby*2	Front Dolby	Back Dolby	Surround Dolby	-
			Front Dolby & Top Middle & Back Dolby*2	Front Dolby	Back Dolby	Top Middle	-
			Front Dolby & Surr. Dolby & Rear Height	Front Dolby	Rear Height	Surround Dolby	-
	None	6ch	Front Dolby & Surr. Dolby & Back Dolby*2	Front Dolby	Back Dolby	Surround Dolby	-





Combinations of height speakers to be used				Connected speaker terminals			
	Number of height / ceiling speakers	Number of Dolby Speakers	Combination pattern	HEIGHT 1	HEIGHT 2	HEIGHT 3	HEIGHT 4 / FRONT WIDE*1
7ch	7ch	None	Front Height & Top Middle & Rear Height & Top Surround*3	Front Height	Rear Height	Top Middle	L: Top Surround
			Front Height & Top Middle & Rear Height & Center Height*3	Front Height	Rear Height	Top Middle	R: Center Height
	5ch	2ch	Front Height & Surr. Dolby & Rear Height & Top Surround*3	Front Height	Rear Height	Surround Dolby	L: Top Surround
			Front Height & Surr. Dolby & Rear Height & Center Height*3	Front Height	Rear Height	Surround Dolby	R: Center Height
8ch	8ch	None	Front Height & Top Middle & Rear Height & Top Surround & Center Height*3	Front Height	Rear Height	Top Middle	L: Top Surround R: Center Height
	6ch	2ch	Front Height & Surr. Dolby & Rear Height & Top Surround & Center Height*3	Front Height	Rear Height	Surround Dolby	L: Top Surround R: Center Height

\*1 Connect to the HEIGHT4/Front WIDE speaker terminal to use Front Wide speakers. Set "Floor" - "Layout" in the menu to "5ch & FW" or "5ch & SB & FW". (🔍 p. 231)

\*2 This combination can be selected when using Surround Back speakers.

\*3 For the best Auro-3D experience Surround Height speakers are recommended, however you may substitute Rear Height speakers from a Dolby Atmos speaker setup in place of Surround Height speakers.

\*4 Use 2 sets of Height speakers in the appropriate sound modes for Dolby Atmos, DTS:X or Auro-3D playback.  
Use the Front Height and Rear Height speakers for Dolby Atmos or DTS:X playback.  
Use the Front Height and Surround Height speakers for Auro-3D playback.

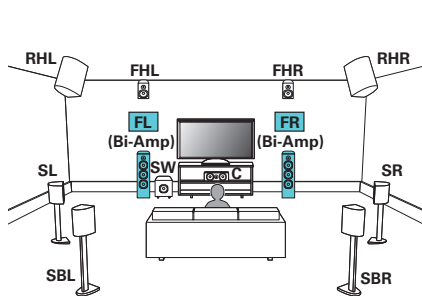
\*5 This combination can be selected when "Floor" - "Layout" in the menu to "5ch" or "5ch & SB". (🔍 p. 231)



## Bi-amp connection

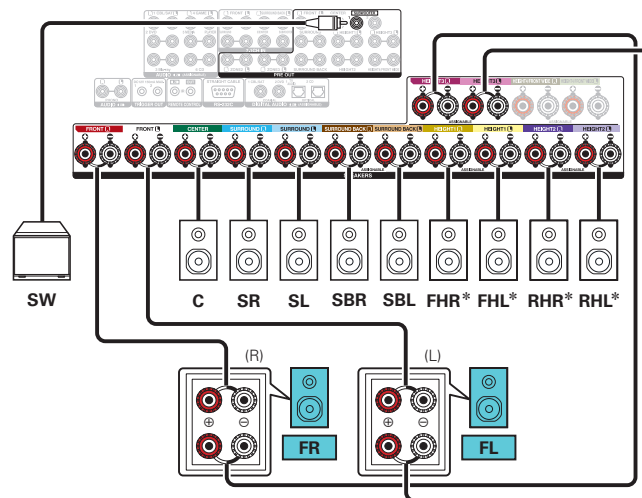
### ■ 11.1-channel playback (bi-amp connection of front speakers)

This system plays back 11.1-channels. You can use the bi-amp connection for front speakers. Bi-amp connection is a method to connect separate amplifiers to the tweeter terminal and woofer terminal of a speaker that supports bi-amplification. This connection enables back EMF (power returned without being output) from the woofer to flow into the tweeter without affecting the sound quality, producing a higher sound quality.



#### NOTE

- When making bi-amp connections, be sure to remove the short-circuiting plate or wire between the speaker's woofer and tweeter terminals.



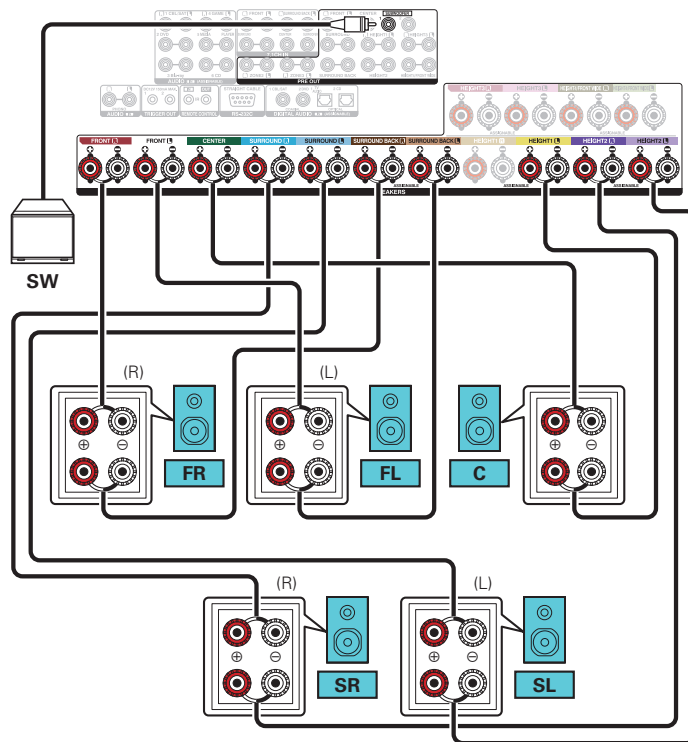
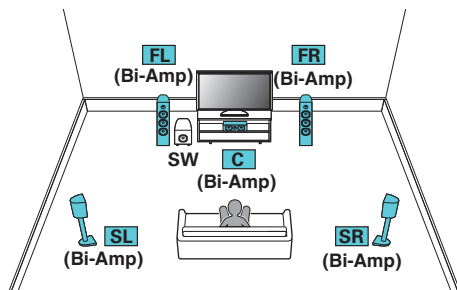
\* The height speakers, ceiling speakers and Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers can be connected to the HEIGHT1 and HEIGHT2 speaker terminals. Set the speaker to be connected from "Height" in the menu. (p. 231)



## ■ 5.1-channel playback : Bi-amp connection of front, center and surround speakers

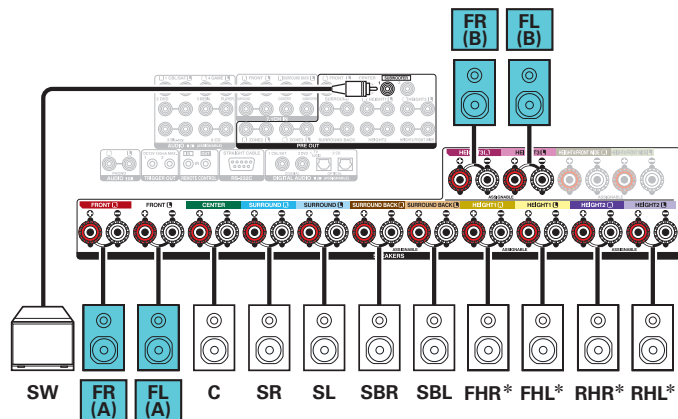
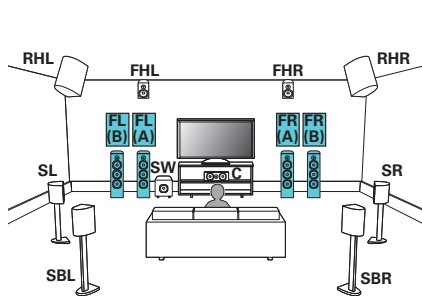
This system plays back 5.1-channels.

You can use the bi-amp connection for all front, center and surround speakers.



## Connecting 11.1-channel speakers: Second pair of front speakers

This system enables switching playback between front speakers A and B as desired.



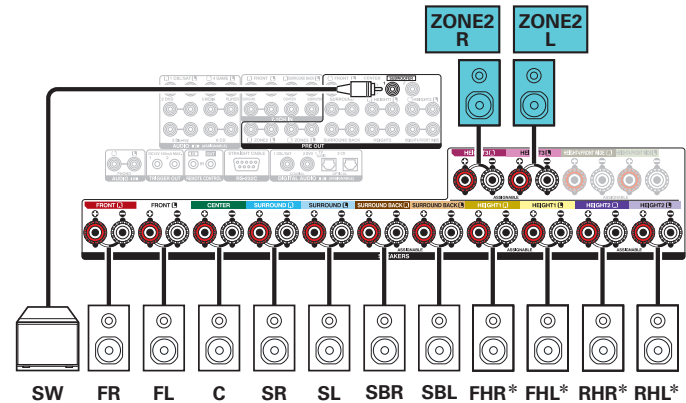
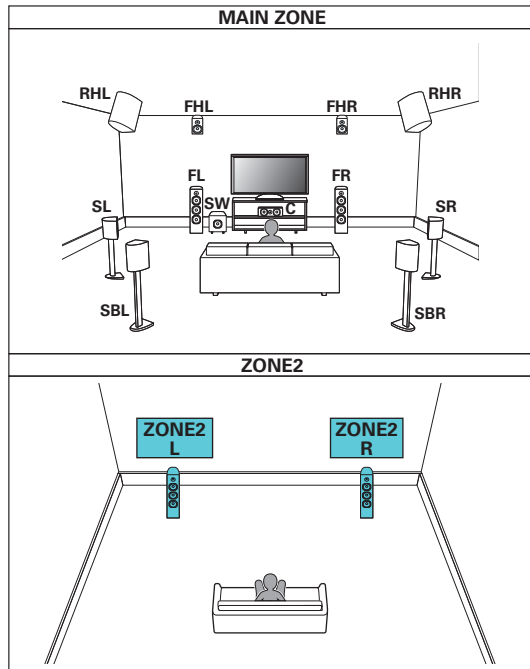
\* The height speakers, ceiling speakers and Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers can be connected to the HEIGHT1 and HEIGHT2 speaker terminals. Set the speaker to be connected from “Height” in the menu. (p. 231)



## Connecting multi-zone speakers

### ■ 11.1-channel playback (MAIN ZONE) + 2-channel playback (ZONE2 or ZONE3)

This type of configuration plays back 11.1-channels in MAIN ZONE and 2-channels in ZONE2.  
 (Speakers can output audio from ZONE3 instead of ZONE2 (Assign Mode: 11.1ch + ZONE3)).

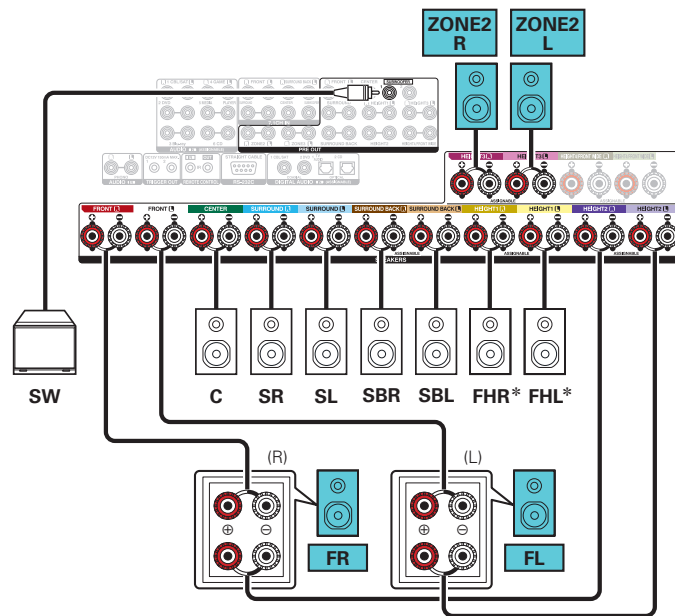
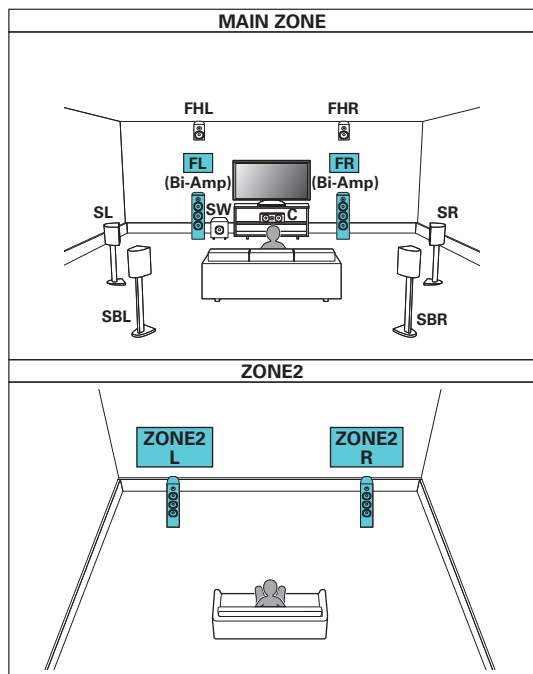


\* The height speakers, ceiling speakers and Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers can be connected to the HEIGHT1 and HEIGHT2 speaker terminals. Set the speaker to be connected from "Height" in the menu. (p. 231)



## ■ 9.1-channel playback (bi-amp connection of front speakers: MAIN ZONE) + 2-channel playback (ZONE2)

This type of configuration plays back 9.1-channels in MAIN ZONE and 2-channels in ZONE2. You can use the bi-amp connection for front speakers in MAIN ZONE.

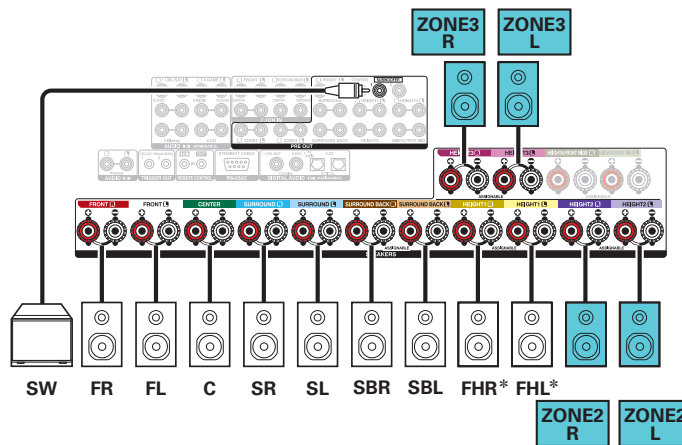
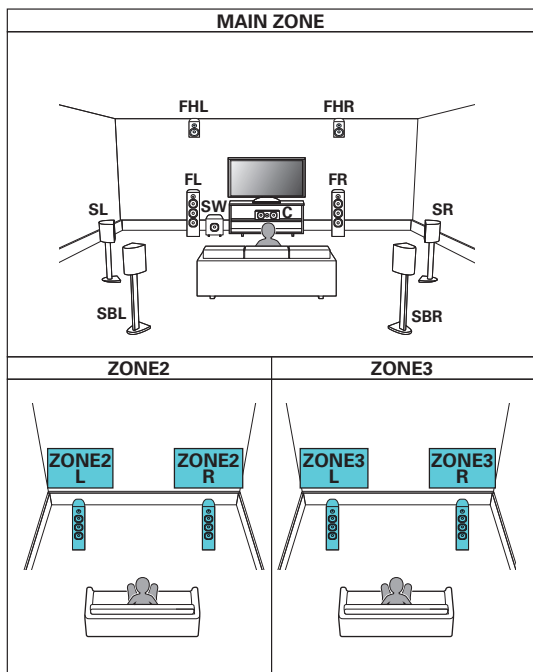


\* The height speakers, ceiling speakers and Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers can be connected to the HEIGHT1 and HEIGHT2 speaker terminals. Set the speaker to be connected from "Height" in the menu. (p. 231)



## ■ 9.1-channel playback (MAIN ZONE) + 2-channel playback (ZONE2) + 2-channel playback (ZONE3)

This type of configuration plays back 9.1-channels in MAIN ZONE and 2-channels in ZONE2 and ZONE3.

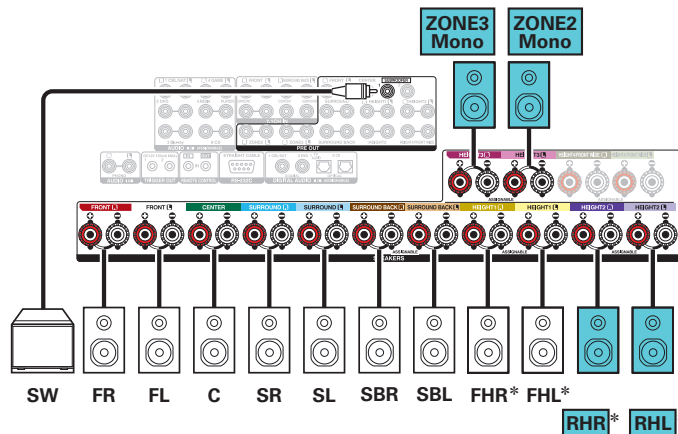
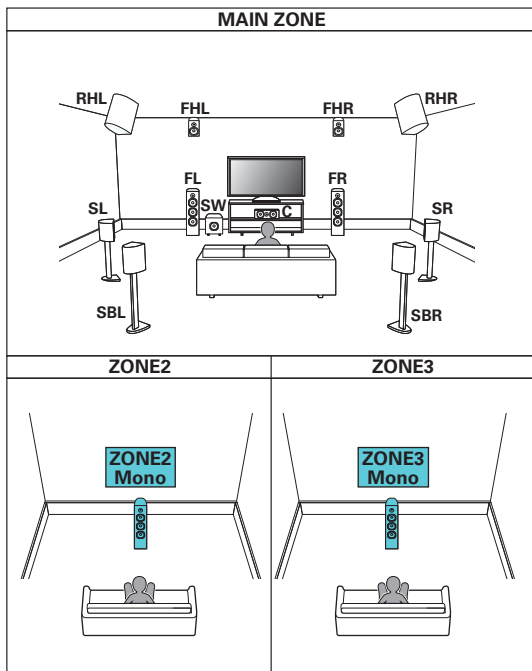


\* The height speakers, ceiling speakers and Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers can be connected to the HEIGHT1 and HEIGHT2 speaker terminals. Set the speaker to be connected from "Height" in the menu. (p. 231)



## ■ 11.1-channel playback (MAIN ZONE) + 1-channel playback (ZONE2) + 1-channel playback (ZONE3)

This type of configuration plays back 11.1-channels in MAIN ZONE and 1-channel (monaural) in ZONE2 and ZONE3.



\* The height speakers, ceiling speakers and Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers can be connected to the HEIGHT1 and HEIGHT2 speaker terminals. Set the speaker to be connected from "Height" in the menu. (p. 231)

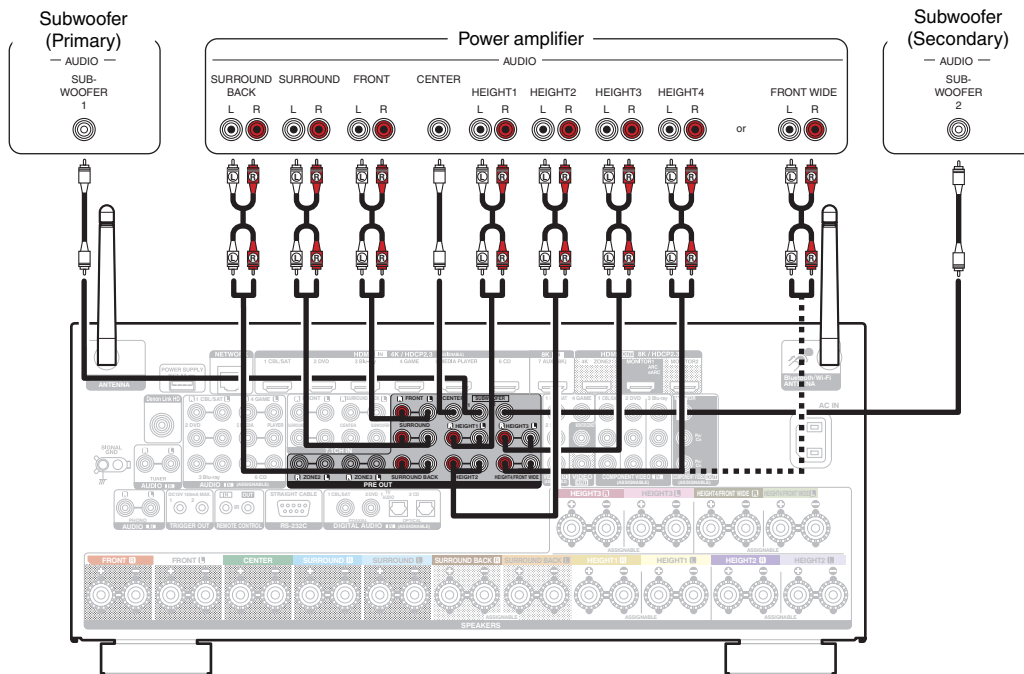




## Connecting an external power amplifier

You can use this unit as a pre-amp by connecting an external power amplifier to the PRE OUT connectors. By adding a power amplifier to each channel, the realism of the sound can be further enhanced.

Select the terminal to use and connect the device.



- Set "Assign Mode" to "Pre Amplifier" if connecting all channels to the Pre-out connectors using an external amplifier. (☞ p. 230)  
This stops operation of the internal power amplifier of this unit, reducing interference in the pre amplifier created by the power amplifier.
- When using just one surround back speaker, connect it to the left channel (L) terminal.

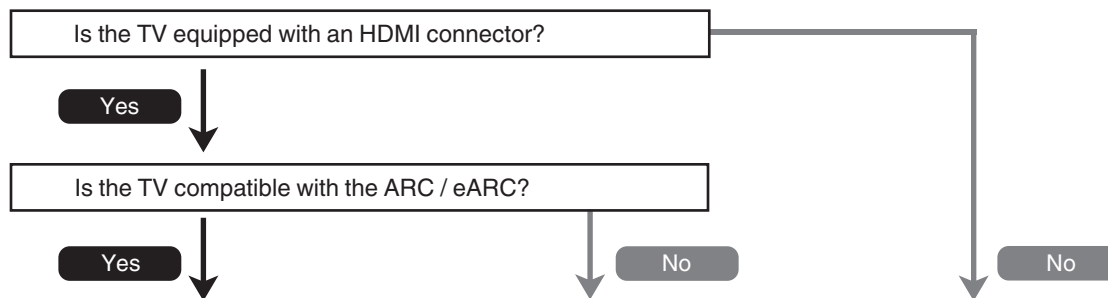


## Connecting a TV

Connect a TV to this unit so that the input video is output to the TV. You can also enjoy audio from the TV on this unit.

How to connect a TV depends on the connectors and functions equipped on the TV.

ARC (Audio Return Channel) / eARC (Enhanced Audio Return Channel) function plays TV audio on this unit by sending the TV audio signal to this unit via HDMI cable.



**“Connection 1 : TV equipped with an HDMI connector and compatible with the ARC (Audio Return Channel) / eARC (Enhanced Audio Return Channel)”** (🔧 p. 83)

**“Connection 2 : TV equipped with an HDMI connector and incompatible with the ARC (Audio Return Channel) / eARC (Enhanced Audio Return Channel)”** (🔧 p. 84)

**“Connection 3 : TV equipped without an HDMI connector”** (🔧 p. 85)

### NOTE

- Use a TV with a 2 prong power plug for this unit. Do not connect a TV with a 3 prong power plug, as this may cause noise.

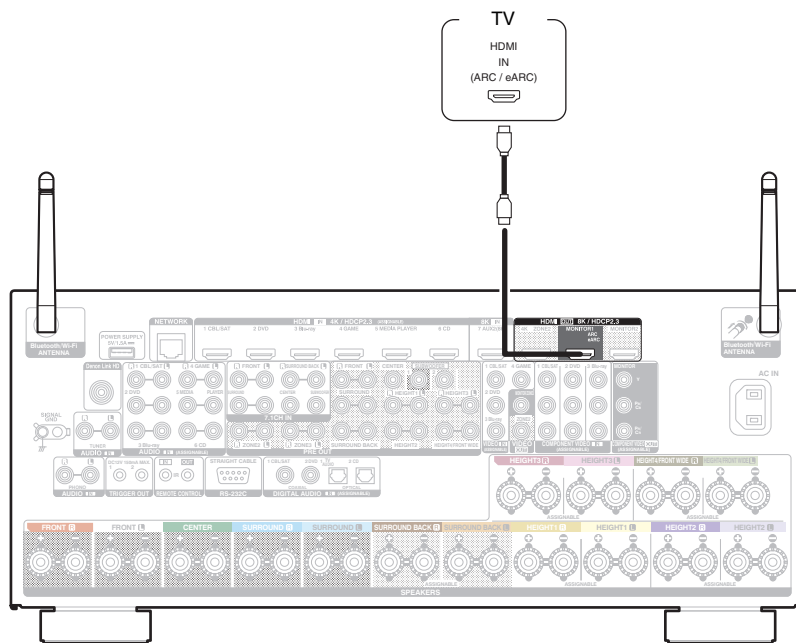


## Connection 1 : TV equipped with an HDMI connector and compatible with the ARC (Audio Return Channel) / eARC (Enhanced Audio Return Channel)

Use an HDMI cable to connect a TV that is compatible with the ARC / eARC function to this unit.

Set “HDMI Control” to “On” or “ARC” to “On” when using a TV that supports the ARC function. (☞ p. 201)

Using an eARC function-compatible television enables audio playback from the speaker connected to this unit, regardless of “HDMI Control” and “ARC” settings in the menu.



- When using the ARC / eARC function, connect to the HDMI MONITOR 1 connector.
- eARC function settings may be required depending on the eARC function-compatible television you are using. Make sure eARC is set to on if this setting exists on your television. For more information, check your television's owner's manual.
- When an ARC and eARC function-compatible television is connected, the eARC function is prioritized.
- Use a “High Speed HDMI Cable with Ethernet” when using an ARC / eARC function-compatible television.
- Use an “Ultra High Speed 48 Gbps HDMI cable” to enjoy 8K video.
- Set “4K/8K Signal Format” to “8K Enhanced” in the menu to enjoy 8K video. (☞ p. 209)

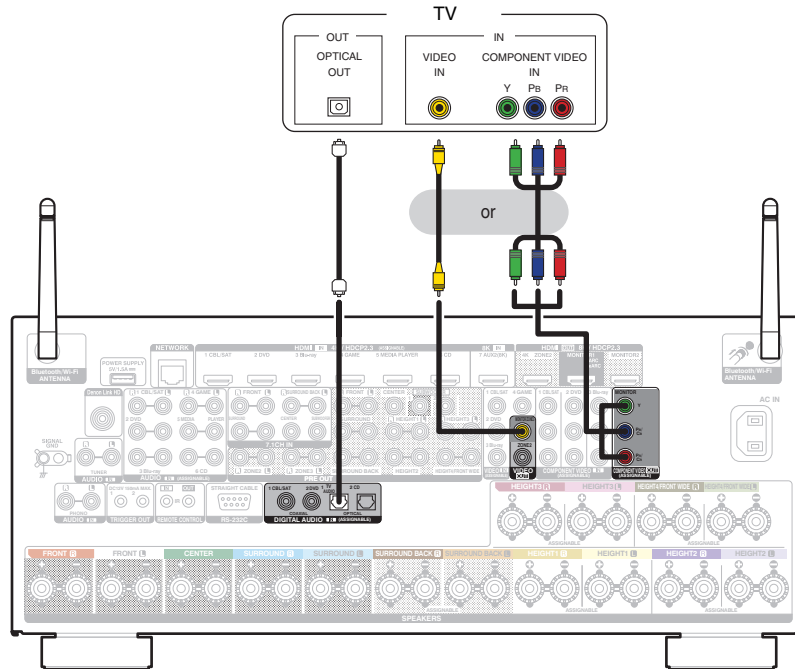




## Connection 3 : TV equipped without an HDMI connector

Use a component video or a video cable to connect the TV to this unit.

To listen to audio from TV on this unit, use an optical cable to connect the TV to this unit.



## Connecting a playback device

This unit is equipped with three types of video input connectors (HDMI, component video and composite video) and three types of audio input connectors (HDMI, digital audio and audio).

Select input connectors on this unit according to the connectors equipped on the device you want to connect.

If the device connected to this unit is equipped with an HDMI connector, it is recommended to use HDMI connections.

In the HDMI connection, audio and video signals can be transmitted through a single HDMI cable.

- “Connecting a set-top box (Satellite tuner/cable TV)” (🔗 p. 87)
- “Connecting a DVD player or Blu-ray Disc player” (🔗 p. 88)
- “Connecting a Blu-ray Disc player compatible with the Denon Link HD function” (🔗 p. 89)
- “Connecting a player device compatible with the 8K” (🔗 p. 90)
- “Connecting a video camcorder or game console” (🔗 p. 91)
- “Connecting a turntable” (🔗 p. 92)
- “Connecting a device with a multi-channel output connector” (🔗 p. 93)



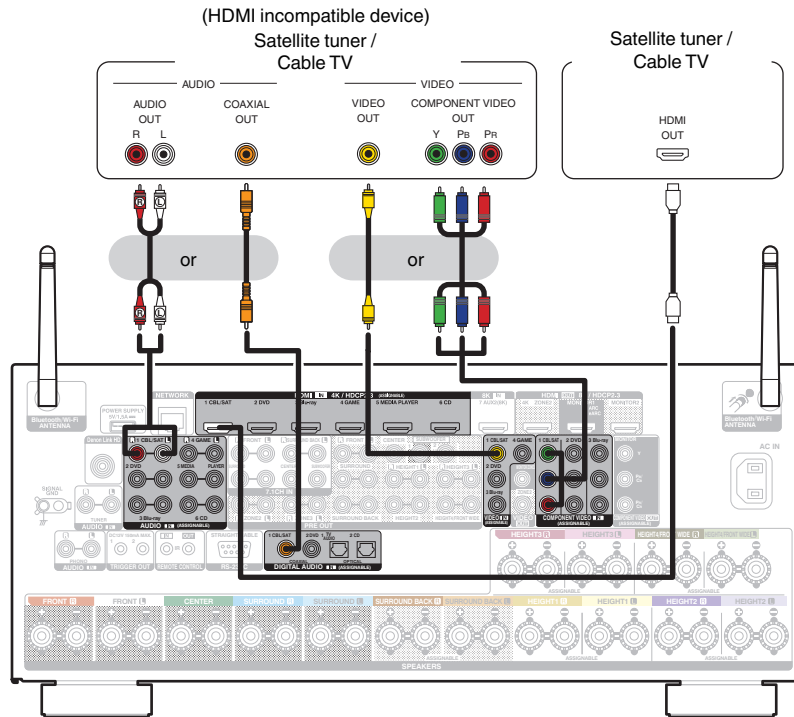
- Connect devices to this unit as indicated by the input sources printed on the audio/video input connectors of this unit.
- The source that is assigned to the HDMI IN, DIGITAL AUDIO IN, COMPONENT VIDEO IN, VIDEO IN and AUDIO IN connectors can be changed. See “Input Assign” on how to change the input source assigned to the input connectors. (🔗 p. 212)
- To play back audio signals that are input to this unit on a TV connected via HDMI, set in the menu “HDMI Audio Out” to “TV”. (🔗 p. 199)
- To enjoy content that is copyright protected by HDCP 2.2 or HDCP 2.3, use a playback device and TV compatible with HDCP 2.2 or HDCP 2.3.



## Connecting a set-top box (Satellite tuner/cable TV)

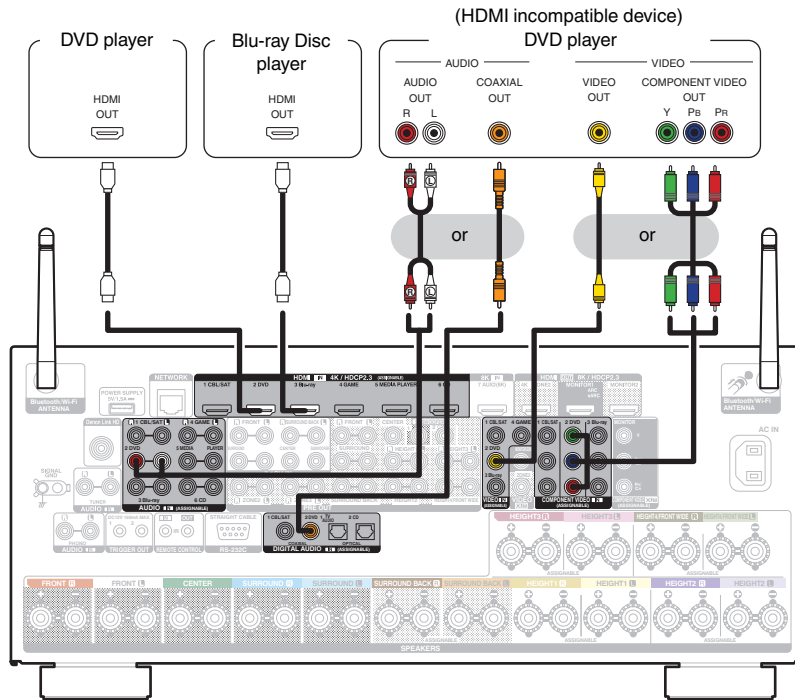
This explanation uses the connection with a satellite tuner/cable TV STB as an example.

Select the input connectors on this unit to match the connectors on the device that you want to connect to.



## Connecting a DVD player or Blu-ray Disc player

This explanation uses the connection with a DVD player or Blu-ray Disc player as an example.  
 Select the input connectors on this unit to match the connectors on the device that you want to connect to.



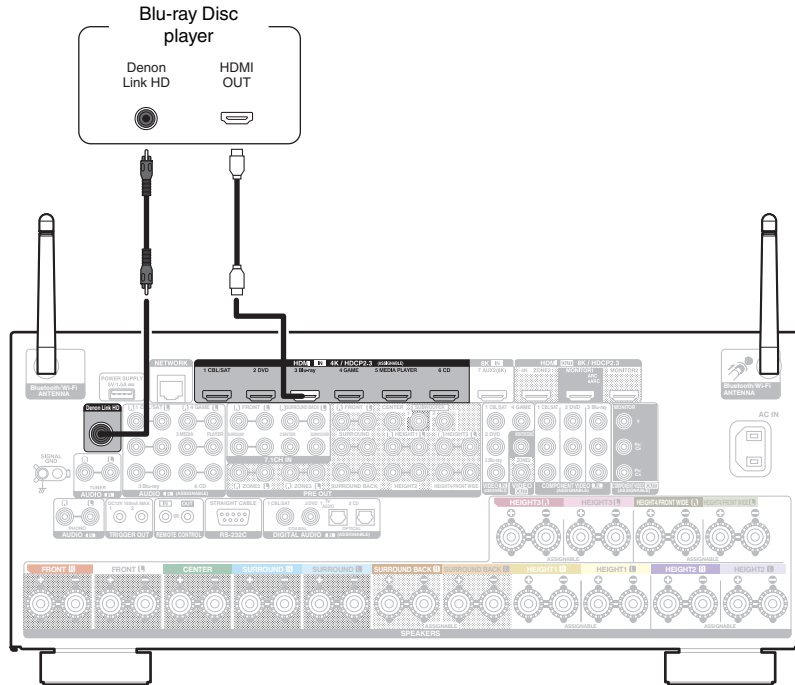
- When connecting a Blu-ray Disc player that is compatible with Denon Link HD, see "Connecting a Blu-ray Disc player compatible with the Denon Link HD function" (p. 89).





## Connecting a Blu-ray Disc player compatible with the Denon Link HD function

By making a Denon Link HD connection to a player compatible with the Denon Link HD function, you can enjoy higher quality playback compared with when only the HDMI connector connection is made.



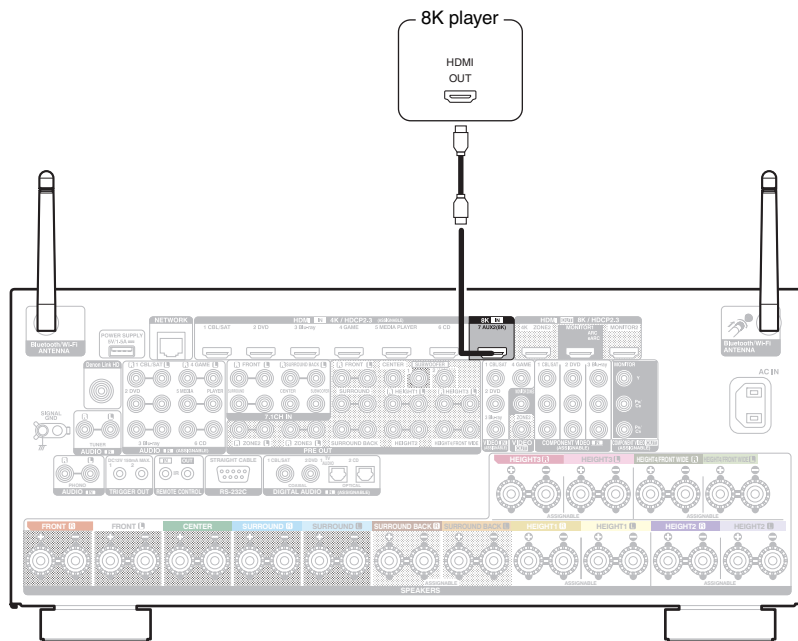
- Both HDMI and Denon Link HD connections are required for this connection method.
- Set "Input Mode" on the menu to "Auto" or "HDMI". (ⓘ p. 216)



## Connecting a player device compatible with the 8K

This unit supports 8K HDMI video signals.

If your player supports 8K, connect it to the HDMI 7 (8K) connector on your device.



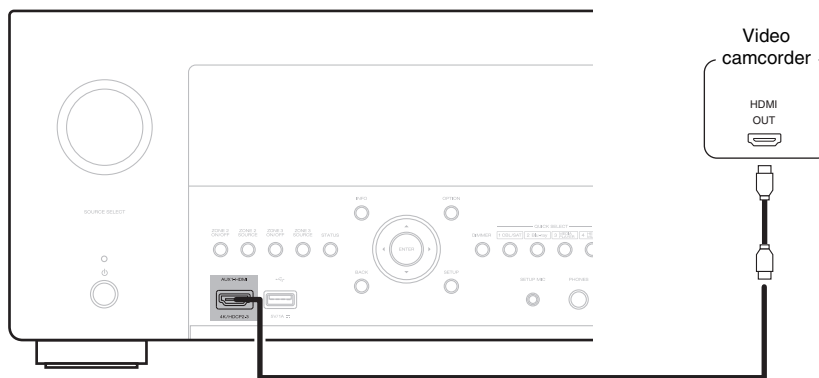
- To enjoy 8K video, connect an 8K-compatible TV with an "Ultra High Speed 48 Gbps HDMI cable".
- Set "4K/8K Signal Format" to "8K Enhanced" in the menu to enjoy 8K video. (🔧 p. 209)



## Connecting a video camcorder or game console

This explanation uses the connection with a video camcorders as an example.

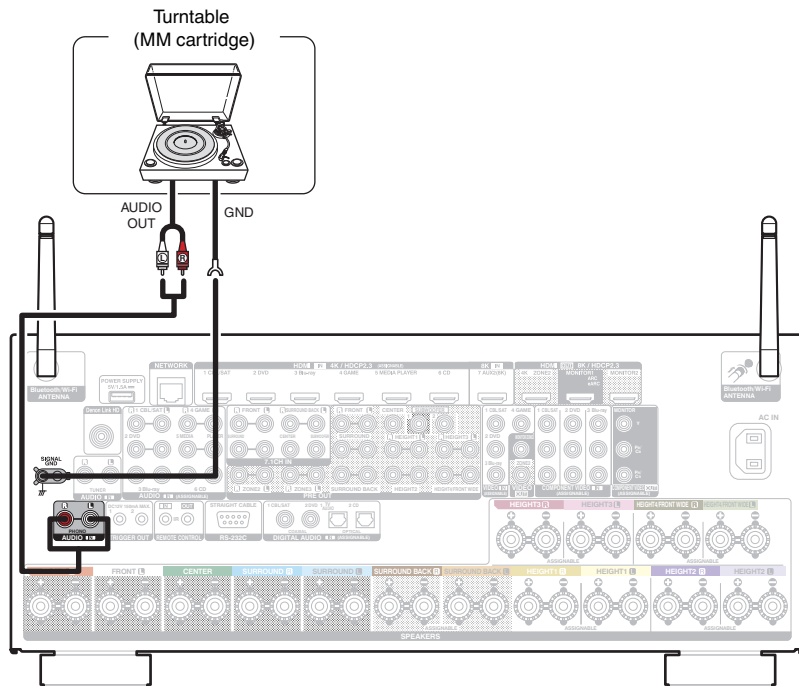
Connect a playback device to this unit, such as a video camcorder or game console.



## Connecting a turntable

This unit is compatible with turntables equipped with a moving magnet (MM) phono cartridge. When you connect to a turntable with a low output moving coil (MC) cartridge, use a commercially available MC head amp or a step-up transformer.

If you set this unit's input source to "Phono" and you accidentally increase the volume without having a turntable connected, you may hear a hum noise from the speakers.



### NOTE

- The earth terminal (SIGNAL GND) of this unit is not for safety grounding purposes. If this terminal is connected when there is a lot of noise, the noise can be reduced. Note that depending on the turntable, connecting the ground line may have the reverse effect of increasing noise. In this case, it is not necessary to connect the ground line.

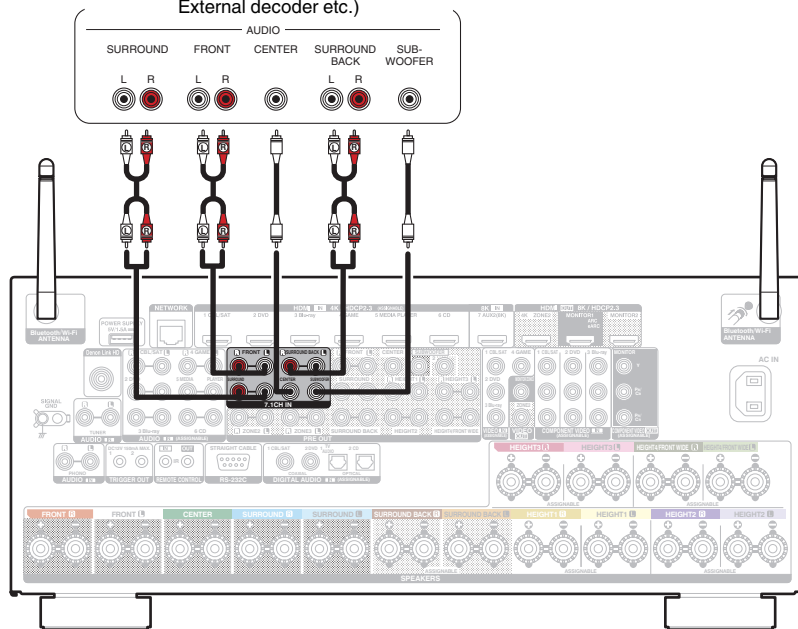


## Connecting a device with a multi-channel output connector

You can connect this unit to an external device fitted with multi-channel sound audio output connectors to enjoy music and video.

To play analog signals input from 7.1CH IN connectors, set "Input Mode" to "7.1CH IN". (🔗 p. 216)

Devices with a multi-channel output connector  
(Blu-ray Disc player, DVD player,  
External decoder etc.)



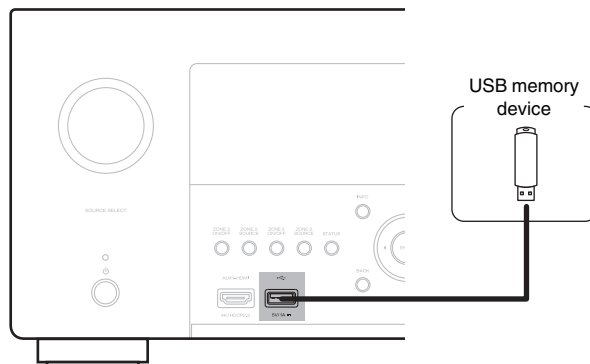
- The video signal can be connected in the same way as a Blu-ray Disc player/DVD player. (🔗 p. 88)



## Connecting a USB memory device to the USB port

Connect to the USB port on the front panel of this unit to play music files saved to a USB memory device.

For operating instructions see “Playing a USB memory device” (📖 p. 103).



- Denon does not guarantee that all USB memory devices will operate or receive power. When using a portable USB hard disk drive (HDD) which came with an AC adapter, use that device's supplied AC adapter.
- The USB port on the rear panel can only be used to supply power (5 V/1.5 A). It cannot be used to play music files. (📖 p. 25)

### NOTE

- USB memory devices will not work via a USB hub.
- It is not possible to use this unit by connecting the unit's USB port to a PC via a USB cable.
- Do not use an extension cable when connecting a USB memory device. This may cause radio interference with other devices.



## Connecting to a home network (LAN)

This unit can connect to a network using a wired LAN or wireless LAN.

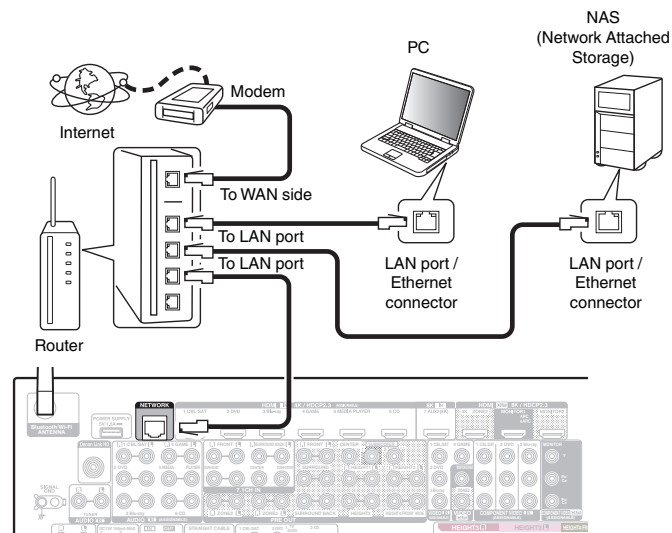
You can connect this unit to your home network (LAN) to enable various types of playback and operations as described below.

- Playback of network audio such as Internet Radio and from your media server(s)
- Playback of streaming music services
- Using the Apple AirPlay function
- Operation on this unit via the network
- Operation with the HEOS wireless multi-room sound system
- Firmware Update

**For connections to the Internet, contact an ISP (Internet Service Provider) or a computer shop.**

### Wired LAN

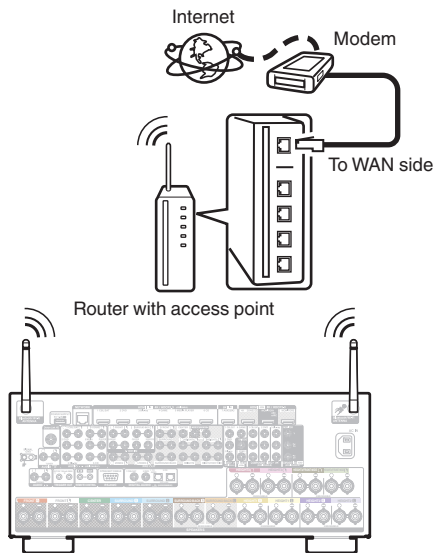
To make connections via wired LAN, use a LAN cable to connect the router to this unit as shown in the figure below.



## Wireless LAN

When connecting to the network via wireless LAN, connect the external antennas for Bluetooth/wireless connectivity connection to the rear panel and stand them upright.

See “Wi-Fi Setup” on how to connect to a wireless LAN router. (🔍 p. 252)



- When using this unit, we recommend you use a router equipped with the following functions:
  - Built-in DHCP server  
This function automatically assigns IP addresses on the LAN.
  - Built-in 100BASE-TX switch  
When connecting multiple devices, we recommend a switching hub with a speed of 100 Mbps or greater.
- Only use a shielded STP or ScTP LAN cable (readily available at electronics stores). (CAT-5 or greater recommended)
- The normal shielded-type LAN cable is recommended.  
If a flat-type cable or unshielded-type cable is used, other devices could be affected by noise.
- When using this unit connected to a network with no DHCP function, configure the IP address, etc. in “Network”. (🔍 p. 251)

### NOTE

- The types of routers that can be used depend on the ISP. Contact your ISP or a computer shop for details.
- This unit is not compatible with PPPoE. A PPPoE compatible router is required if your contracted line is not set using PPPoE.
- Do not connect a NETWORK connector directly to the LAN port / Ethernet connector on your computer.
- Various online services may be discontinued without prior notice.



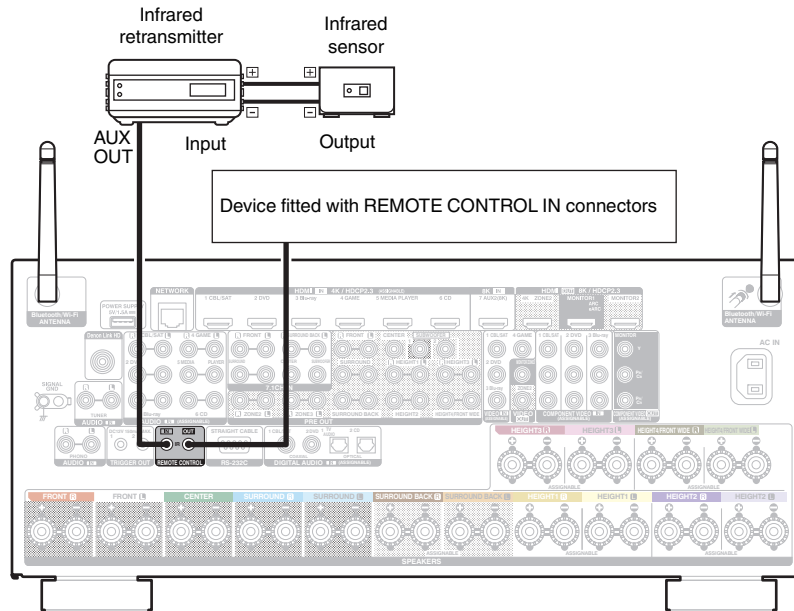


# Connecting an external control device

## REMOTE CONTROL jacks

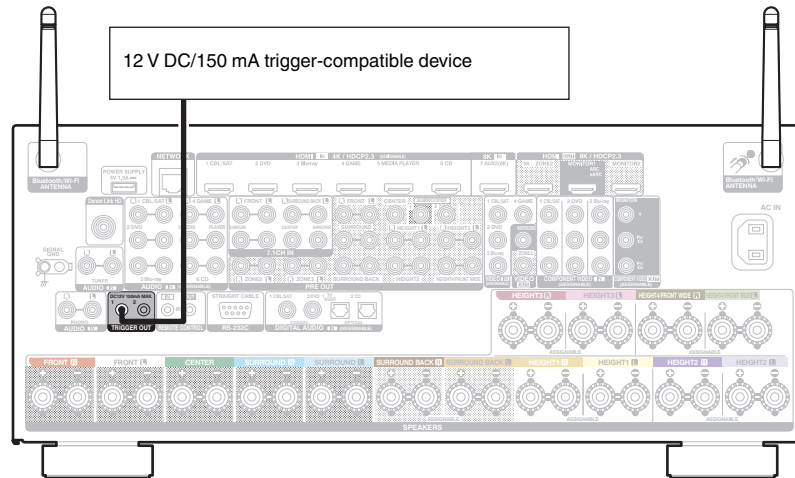
When this unit is installed in a location where the remote control signals cannot reach (installation in a cabinet etc.), it can still be controlled by the remote control by connecting a remote control receiver unit (sold separately).

You can also use it to remotely control ZONE2 and ZONE3 (another rooms).



## TRIGGER OUT jacks

When a device with TRIGGER IN jack is connected, the connected device's power on/standby can be controlled through linked operation to this unit. The TRIGGER OUT jack outputs a maximum 12 V DC/150 mA electrical signal.



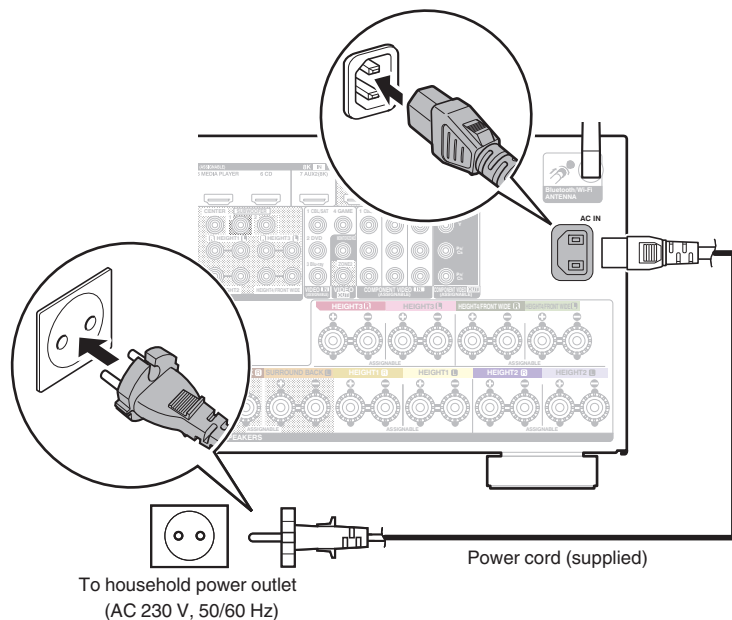
### NOTE

- Use a monaural mini-plug cable for connecting the TRIGGER OUT jacks. Do not use a stereo mini-plug cable.
- If the permissible trigger input level for the connected device is larger than 12 V DC/150 mA, or has shorted, the TRIGGER OUT jack cannot be used. In this case, turn off the power to the unit, and disconnect it.



## Connecting the power cord

After completing all the connections, insert the power plug into the power outlet.



## ■ Contents

### Basic operation

Turning the power on	101
Selecting the input source	101
Adjusting the volume	102
Turning off the sound temporarily (Muting)	102
Selecting a sound mode	139

### Playback a device

Playing a DVD player/Blu-ray Disc player	102
Playing a USB memory device	103
Listening to music on a Bluetooth device	107

### Playback network audio/service

Listening to Internet Radio	112
Playing back files stored on a PC or NAS	114
Getting the HEOS App	118
AirPlay function	127
Spotify Connect function	130

### Convenience functions

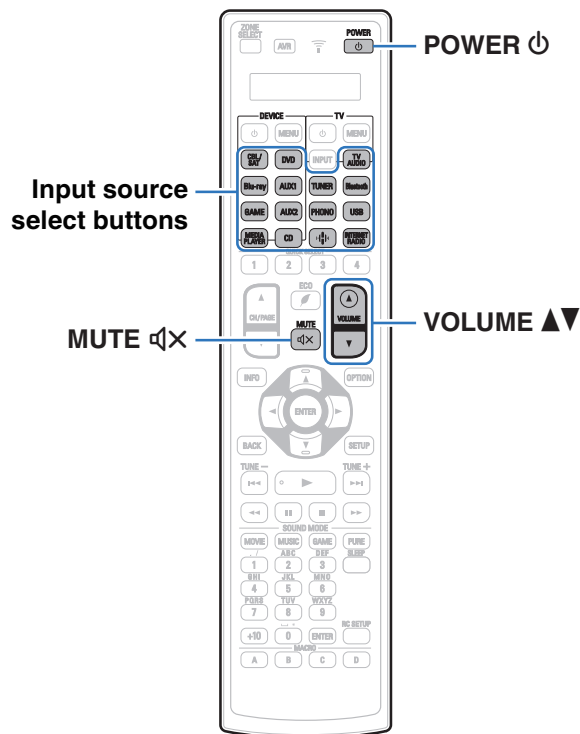
Convenience functions	131
HDMI Control function	155
Smart Menu function	156
Sleep timer function	158
Quick select plus function	160
Panel lock function	163
Remote lock function	165

### Other functions

Web control function	166
Playback in ZONE2/ZONE3 (Another room)	168



# Basic operation



## Turning the power on

**1** Press **POWER** ⏻ to turn on power to the unit.



- You can press the input source select button when the unit is in standby mode to turn on the power.
- You can also switch the power to standby by pressing ⏻ on the main unit.

## Selecting the input source

**1** Press the **input source select button** to be played back.  
The desired input source can be selected directly.



- You can also select the input source by turning **SOURCE SELECT** on the main unit.



## Adjusting the volume

### 1 Use VOLUME ▲▼ to adjust the volume.



- The variable range differs according to the input signal and channel level setting.
- You can also adjust the master volume by turning MASTER VOLUME on the main unit.

## Turning off the sound temporarily (Muting)

### 1 Press MUTE ◀X.

- MUTE indicator on the display flashes.
- ◀X appears on the TV screen.



- The sound is reduced to the level set at "Mute Level" in the menu. (👉 p. 191)
- To cancel mute, either adjust the sound volume or press MUTE ◀X again.

## Playback a DVD player/Blu-ray Disc player

The following describes the procedure for playing DVD player/Blu-ray Disc player.

### 1 Prepare for playback.

- ① Turn on the power of the TV, subwoofer and player.
- ② Change the TV input to the input of this unit.

### 2 Press POWER ⏻ to turn on power to the unit.

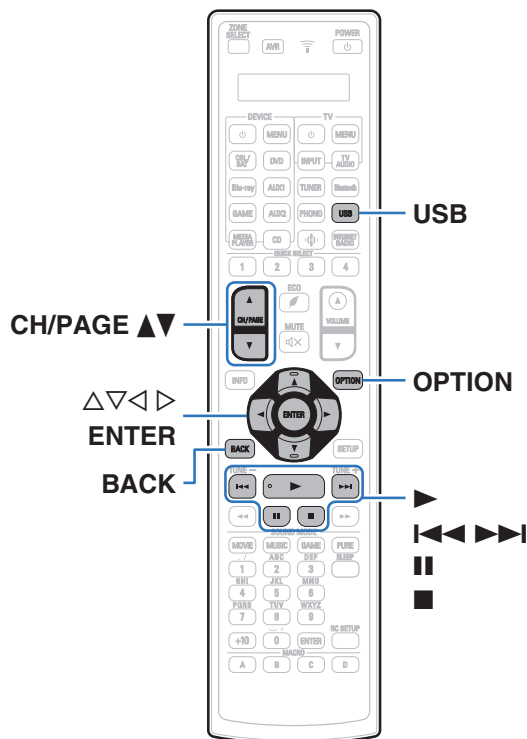
### 3 Press DVD or Blu-ray to switch an input source for a player used for playback.

### 4 Play the DVD player or Blu-ray Disc player.

### ■ Surround playback (👉 p. 139)



## Playing a USB memory device



- Playing back music files stored on a USB memory device.
- Only USB memory devices conforming to mass storage class standards can be played on this unit.
- This unit is compatible with USB memory devices in “FAT32” or “NTFS” format.
- The audio format types and specifications supported by this unit for playback are as follows.  
See “Playing back a USB memory devices” (👉 p. 323) for details.

- WMA
- MP3
- WAV
- MPEG-4 AAC
- FLAC
- Apple Lossless
- DSD



## Playing files stored on USB memory devices

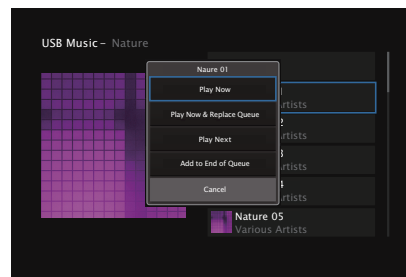
- 1 Insert a “FAT32” or “NTFS” formatted USB memory device into the USB port.
- 2 Press USB to switch the input source to “USB”.
- 3 Select the name of this unit.

### 4 Browse the music on your USB memory device and select something to play.



- When you select something to play you will be asked how you want to queue up your music.

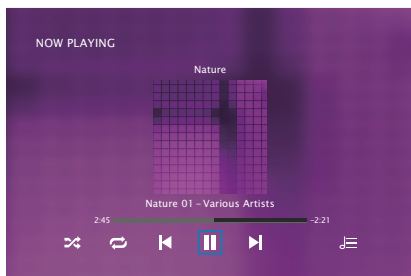
<b>Play Now:</b>	Inserts the item into the queue after the currently playing track and plays the selected item immediately.
<b>Play Now &amp; Replace Queue:</b>	Clears the queue and plays the selected item immediately.
<b>Play Next:</b>	Inserts the item into the queue after the current song and plays it when the current song ends.
<b>Add to End of Queue:</b>	Adds the item to the end of the queue.





## 5 Use $\Delta$ / $\nabla$ to select the “Play Now” or “Play Now & Replace Queue”, then press ENTER.

Playback starts.



Operation buttons	Function
	Playback
	Pause
	Stop
	Skip to previous track / Skip to next track
<b>CH/PAGE <math>\Delta</math>/<math>\nabla</math></b>	Switch to the previous page/next page in the list display



- When an MP3 music file includes album art data, the album art can be displayed while playing the file.

### NOTE

- Note that Denon will accept no responsibility whatsoever for any problems arising with the data on a USB memory device when using this unit in conjunction with the USB memory device.
- When a USB memory device is connected to this unit, the unit loads all of the files on the USB memory device. Loading may take a while if the USB memory device contains a large number of folders and/or files.

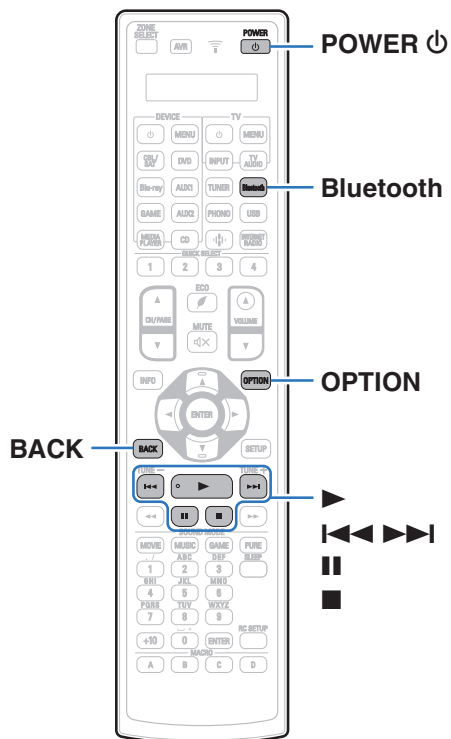


## ■ Operations accessible through the option menu

- “Adjusting the audibility of dialog and vocals (Dialog Enhancer)” (👉 p. 133)
- “Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Channel Level Adjust)” (👉 p. 134)
- “Adjusting the tone (Tone)” (👉 p. 135)
- “Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)” (👉 p. 136)
- “Playing the same music in all zones (All Zone Stereo)” (👉 p. 138)



## Listening to music on a Bluetooth device



Music files stored on Bluetooth devices such as smartphones, digital music players, etc. can be enjoyed on this unit by pairing and connecting this unit with the Bluetooth device.

Communication is possible up to a range of about 30 m.

### NOTE

- To play back music from a Bluetooth device, the Bluetooth device needs to support the A2DP profile.




## Playing music from Bluetooth device

In order to enjoy music from a Bluetooth device on this unit, the Bluetooth device must first be paired with this unit.

Once the Bluetooth device has been paired, it does not need to be paired again.

### 1 Prepare for playback.

- ① Connect the supplied external antennas for Bluetooth/wireless connectivity to the Bluetooth/wireless LAN antenna connectors on the rear panel. (☞ p. 25)
- ② Press POWER  to turn on power to the unit.

### 2 Press Bluetooth.

When using for the first time, the unit will go into the pairing mode automatically and "Pairing..." will appear on the display of the unit.

### 3 Activate the Bluetooth settings on your mobile device.

### 4 Select this unit when its name appears in the list of devices displayed on the screen of the Bluetooth device.





Connect to the Bluetooth device while "Pairing" is being displayed on the display of the unit.

Perform the connection with the Bluetooth device close to the unit (about 1 m).

### 5 Play music using any app on your Bluetooth device.

- The Bluetooth device can also be operated with the remote control of this unit.
- The next time the Bluetooth button is pressed on the remote control unit, this unit automatically connects to the last Bluetooth device that was connected.



Operation buttons	Function
	Playback
	Pause
	Stop
	Skip to previous track / Skip to next track



- Press STATUS on this unit during playback to switch the display between Title name, Artist name, Album name, etc.



## Pairing with other Bluetooth devices

Pair a Bluetooth device with this unit.

- 1 Activate the Bluetooth settings on your mobile device.**
- 2 Press and hold Bluetooth on the remote control unit for at least 3 seconds.**  
This unit will go into the pairing mode.
- 3 Select this unit when its name appears in the list of devices displayed on the screen of the Bluetooth device.**



- This unit can be paired with a maximum of 8 Bluetooth devices. When a 9th Bluetooth device is paired, it will be registered in place of the oldest registered device.
- You can also enter pairing mode by pressing the OPTION button when the Bluetooth playback screen is displayed and selecting "Pairing Mode" from the displayed option menu.

### NOTE

- To operate the Bluetooth device with the remote control of this unit, the Bluetooth device needs to support the AVRCP profile.
- The remote control of this unit is not guaranteed to work with all Bluetooth devices.
- Depending on the type of Bluetooth device, this unit outputs audio that is coupled to the volume setting on the Bluetooth device.

### ■ Operations accessible through the option menu

- "Pairing with other Bluetooth devices" (👉 p. 110)
- "Adjusting the audibility of dialog and vocals (Dialog Enhancer)" (👉 p. 133)
- "Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Channel Level Adjust)" (👉 p. 134)
- "Adjusting the tone (Tone)" (👉 p. 135)
- "Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)" (👉 p. 136)
- "Playing the same music in all zones (All Zone Stereo)" (👉 p. 138)



## Reconnecting to this unit from a Bluetooth device

After pairing is completed, the Bluetooth device can be connected without performing any operations on this unit.

This operation also needs to be performed when switching the Bluetooth device for playback.

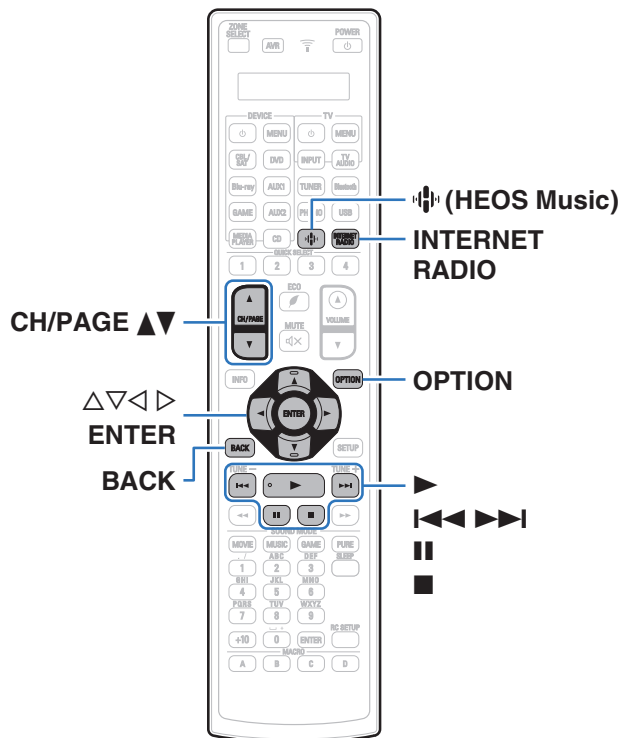
- 1 If a Bluetooth device is currently connected, deactivate the Bluetooth setting of that device to disconnect it.**
- 2 Activate the Bluetooth setting of the Bluetooth device to be connected.**
- 3 Select this unit from the Bluetooth device list on your Bluetooth device.**
- 4 Play music using any app on your Bluetooth device.**



- The screen automatically switches to the “Bluetooth” playback screen if a Bluetooth device is connected while the power of this unit is on.
- When the “Network Control” setting of this unit is set to “Always On” and a Bluetooth device is connected with the unit in the standby state, the power of the unit will be turned on automatically. (🔗 p. 256)



# Listening to Internet Radio



- Internet Radio refers to radio broadcasts distributed over the Internet. Internet Radio stations from around the world can be received.
- The Internet Radio station list on this unit the database service provided by TuneIn Radio service.
- The audio format types and specifications supported by this unit for playback are as follows.  
See “Playing back Internet Radio” (p. 326) for details.

- WMA
- MP3
- MPEG-4 AAC











## Listening to Internet Radio

### 1 Press INTERNET RADIO.

- You can also press  (HEOS Music). Use  $\Delta$ / $\nabla$  to select “TuneIn Internet Radio”, then press ENTER.

### 2 Select the station you want to play.

Operation buttons	Function
	Playback
 *	Pause
	Stop
 *	Skip to previous track / Skip to next track
CH/PAGE  	Switch to the previous page/next page in the list display

\* Enabled when playing Podcasts.









- The display switches between track title and radio station name etc. each time the main unit's STATUS is pressed.

#### NOTE

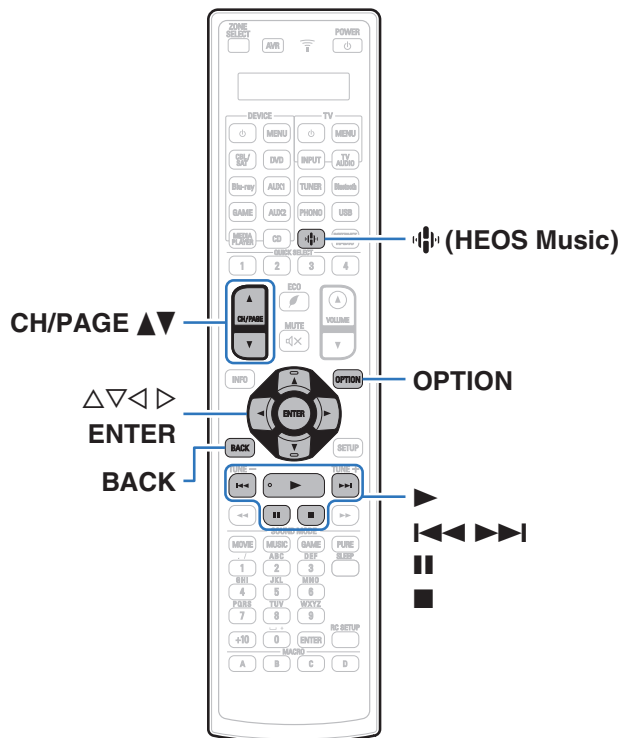
- The radio station database service may be suspended or be otherwise unavailable without notice.

### ■ Operations accessible through the option menu

- “Adding to HEOS Favorites” ( p. 132)
- “Adjusting the audibility of dialog and vocals (Dialog Enhancer)” ( p. 133)
- “Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Channel Level Adjust)” ( p. 134)
- “Adjusting the tone (Tone)” ( p. 135)
- “Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)” ( p. 136)
- “Playing the same music in all zones (All Zone Stereo)” ( p. 138)



## Playing back files stored on a PC or NAS



• This unit can play back music files and playlists (m3u, wpl) from DLNA compatible servers including PCs and NAS devices on your network.

• Supported file formats:

For details, see “Playing back a file saved on a PC or NAS” (👉 p. 325).

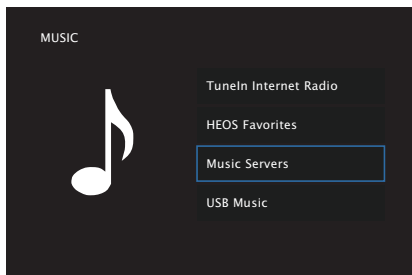
- WMA
- MP3
- WAV
- MPEG-4 AAC
- FLAC
- Apple Lossless
- DSD



## Playing back files stored on a PC or NAS

Use this procedure to play music files or playlists stored on DLNA files servers on your local network.

- 1 Press **HEOS Music**.
- 2 Use **Δ∇** to select “Music Servers”, then press **ENTER**.



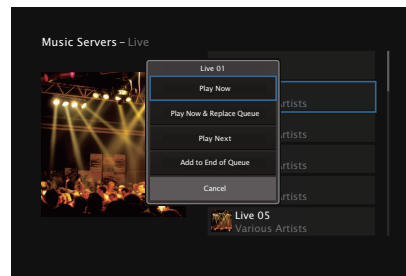
- 3 Select the name of your networked PC or NAS (Network Attached Storage) server.

## 4 Browse the music on your PC/NAS and select something to play.



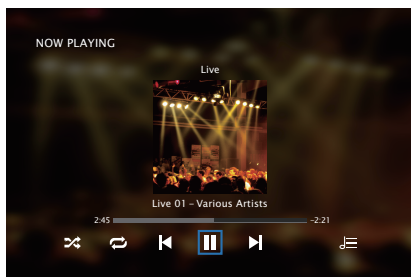
- When you select something to play you will be asked how you want to queue up your music.

<b>Play Now:</b>	Inserts the item into the queue after the currently playing track and plays the selected item immediately.
<b>Play Now &amp; Replace Queue:</b>	Clears the queue and plays the selected item immediately.
<b>Play Next:</b>	Inserts the item into the queue after the current song and plays it when the current song ends.
<b>Add to End of Queue:</b>	Adds the item to the end of the queue.



## 5 Use $\Delta$ $\nabla$ to select the “Play Now” or “Play Now & Replace Queue”, then press ENTER.

Playback starts.



Operation buttons	Function
	Playback
	Pause
	Stop
	Skip to previous track / Skip to next track
CH/PAGE $\Delta$ $\nabla$	Switch to the previous page/next page in the list display



- The display switches between track title, artist name, and album title each time the main unit's STATUS is pressed.
- When a WMA (Windows Media Audio), MP3 or MPEG-4 AAC file includes album art data, the album art can be displayed while the music files are playing.
- If you use Ver.11 or later of Windows Media Player, the album art for WMA files can be displayed.

### NOTE

- When playing back music files with your PC or NAS connected through wireless LAN, audio may be interrupted depending on your wireless LAN environment. In this case, connect using a wired LAN.
- The order in which the tracks/files are displayed depends on the server specifications. If the tracks/files are not displayed in alphabetical order due to the server specifications, searching by the first letter may not work properly.



## ■ Operations accessible through the option menu

- “Adjusting the audibility of dialog and vocals (Dialog Enhancer)” (👉 p. 133)
- “Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Channel Level Adjust)” (👉 p. 134)
- “Adjusting the tone (Tone)” (👉 p. 135)
- “Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)” (👉 p. 136)
- “Playing the same music in all zones (All Zone Stereo)” (👉 p. 138)



## Getting the HEOS App


---

You can use many online music streaming services from the HEOS App. Depending upon your geographical location, there are several options to choose from.

Download the HEOS App for iOS or Android by searching App Store, Google Play store or Amazon Appstore for "HEOS".



## HEOS Account

HEOS Accounts can be registered in “HEOS Account” (👉 p. 258) in the menu of this unit or by tapping “Music” tab - “Settings” icon  in the HEOS App.

### ■ What is a HEOS Account?

A HEOS Account is master account or “keychain” for managing all of your HEOS music services with one single username and password.

### ■ Why do I need a HEOS Account?


With the HEOS Account you just have to enter your music services login names and passwords one time. This allows you to easily and quickly use multiple controller apps on different devices.

You just log into your HEOS Account on any device and you will have access to all of your associated music services, play history and custom playlists, even if you are at a friend’s house listening to music on their HEOS system.

### ■ Signing up for a HEOS Account

You will be instructed to signup for a HEOS Account the first time you try to access any music service from the main “Music” menu of the HEOS App.

### ■ Changing your HEOS Account

- 1 Tap the “Music” tab.
- 2 Select the Settings icon  in the upper left corner of the screen.
- 3 Select “HEOS Account”.
- 4 Change your location, change your password, delete your account or sign out of your account.



## Playing from streaming music services

A music service is an online music company that provides access to vast music collections via free and/or paid subscriptions. Depending upon your geographical location, there are several options to choose from.


### NOTE

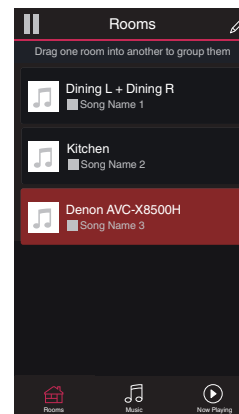
- The HEOS App and brand is not affiliated with any manufacturer of any mobile device. Availability of music services may vary by region. Not all services may be available at time of purchase. Some services may be added or discontinued from time to time based on decisions of the music service providers or others.

## ■ Selecting a room/device

- 1 Tap the “Rooms” tab, and select “Denon AVC-X8500H” if there are multiple products with HEOS Built-in.



- Tap the Pencil icon  at the top right to switch edit mode. You can change the displayed name.



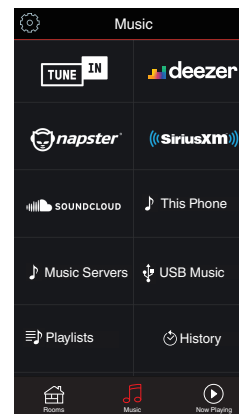


## ■ Selecting the music track or station from music sources

### 1 Tap the “Music” tab and select a music source.



- All music services displayed may not be available in your location.



## 2 Browse the music to play.

After selecting a music track or radio station the app will automatically change to the “Now Playing” screen.



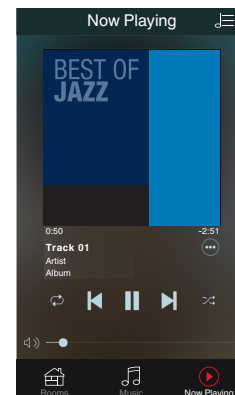
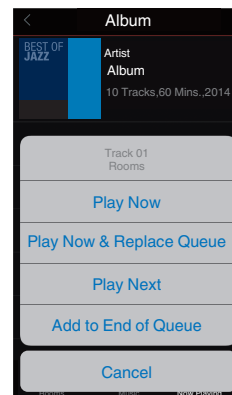
- When you select a music track to play you will be asked how you want to queue up your music.

<b>Play Now:</b>	Inserts the item into the queue after the currently playing track and plays the selected item immediately.
<b>Play Now &amp; Replace Queue:</b>	Clears the queue and plays the selected item immediately.
<b>Play Next:</b>	Inserts the item into the queue after the current song and plays it when the current song ends.
<b>Add to End of Queue:</b>	Adds the item to the end of the queue.



- When you select a radio station the following items are displayed.

<b>Play Now:</b>	Plays the selected item immediately.
<b>Add to HEOS Favorites:</b>	Adds to HEOS Favorites.



## Listening to the same music in multiple rooms

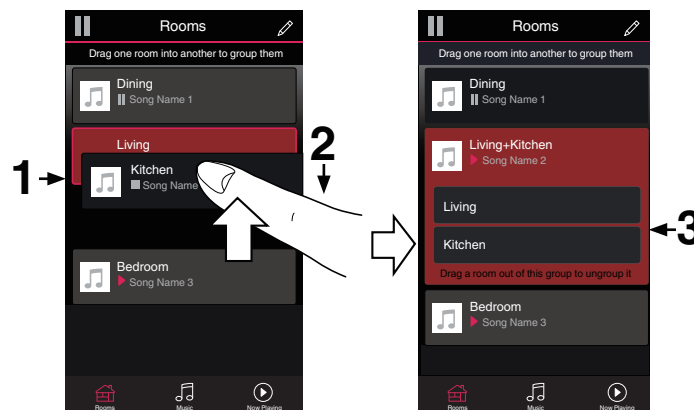
This system is a true multi-room audio system. You can create one or more HEOS groups to automatically synchronize audio playback between multiple products with HEOS Built-in so that the music playing different rooms is perfectly in sync and always sounds amazing! You can easily add up to 32 products to your system in total. You can group up to 16 individual products to have them play the same song fully synchronized.

### ■ Grouping rooms

- 1 Press and hold your finger on room that is not playing music.**
- 2 Drag it into the room that is playing music (indicated by the red outline) and lift your finger.**
- 3 The two rooms will be grouped together into a single device group and both rooms will be playing the same music in perfect sync.**



- When audio from the device connected to this unit is played back in a group, only 2-channel PCM input from the HDMI, digital or analog terminals can be played back.

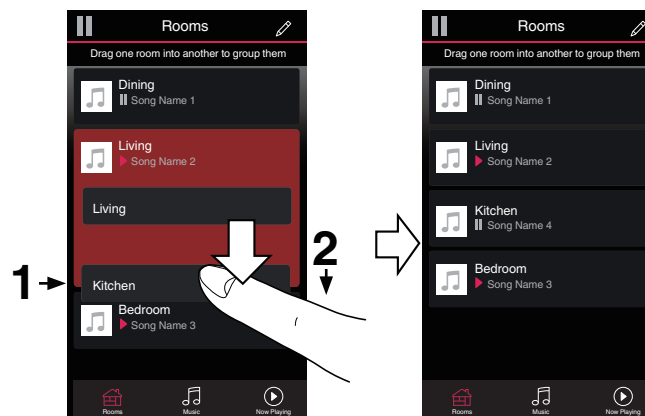


## ■ Ungrouping rooms

- 1 Press and hold your finger on room that you want to remove from the group.
- 2 Drag it out of the group and lift your finger.

### NOTE

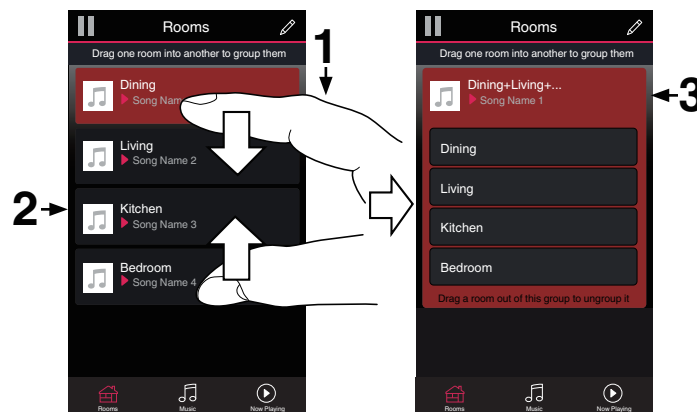
- You can not remove the first room that started playing the music before grouping.



## ■ Grouping all rooms (party mode)

You can easily group 16 rooms together into Party Mode by using a "pinch" gesture.

- 1** Place two fingers on the screen over the list of rooms.
- 2** Quickly pinch your two fingers together and release.
- 3** All of your rooms will be joined together and begin playing the same music in perfect sync.



## ■ Ungrouping all rooms

You can easily ungroup all of your rooms and exit Party Mode by using a "spread" gesture.

- 1 Place two fingers close together on the screen over list of rooms.**
- 2 Quickly spread your two fingers apart from each other and release.**
- 3 All of your rooms will be ungrouped.**



## AirPlay function

Music files stored on your iPhone, iPod touch, iPad or iTunes can be played on this unit via the network.



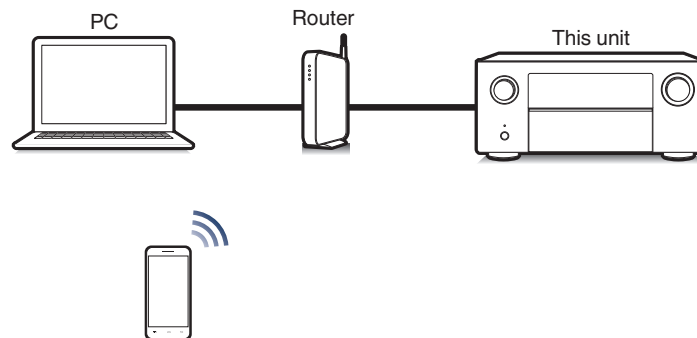
- Source input will be switched to “HEOS Music” when AirPlay playback is started.
- You can stop AirPlay playback by choosing other input source.
- To see song and artist names together, press STATUS on the main unit.
- For information about how to use iTunes, also see the Help for iTunes.
- The screen may differ depending on the OS and software versions.

### This unit supports AirPlay 2.

Sync multiple AirPlay 2 compatible devices/speakers for simultaneous playback.



- This unit supports AirPlay 2 and requires iOS 11.4 or later.



## Playing songs from your iPhone, iPod touch or iPad

If you update your “iPhone/iPod touch/iPad” to iOS 4.2.1 or later, you can stream music stored in your “iPhone/iPod touch/iPad” directly to this unit.

### 1 Connect your iPhone, iPod touch or iPad Wi-Fi to the same network as this unit.

- For details, see your device’s manual.

### 2 Play the song on your iPhone, iPod touch or iPad.

AirPlay icon is displayed on the iPhone, iPod touch or iPad screen.

### 3 Tap the AirPlay icon and select this unit.

[Example] iOS 12



[Example] iOS 10



## Playing iTunes music with this unit

### 1 Install iTunes 10, or later, on a Mac or Windows PC that is connected to the same network as this unit.

### 2 Turn this unit ON.

Set “Network Control” to “Always On” for this unit. (☞ p. 256)

#### NOTE

- When “Network Control” is set to “Always On”, the unit consumes more standby power.

### 3 Start iTunes and click the AirPlay icon to select this unit.

[Example] iTunes



### 4 Choose a song and click play in iTunes.

The music will stream to this unit.





**NOTE**

- In playback using the AirPlay function, the sound is output at the iPhone, iPod touch, iPad or iTunes volume setting level. You should turn down the iPhone, iPod touch, iPad or iTunes volume prior to playback and then adjust it to a suitable level.

## Play a song from your iPhone, iPod touch or iPad on multiple synced devices (AirPlay 2)

Songs from an iPhone, iPod touch or iPad operating iOS 11.4 or later can be synced with multiple AirPlay 2 supported devices for simultaneous playback.

### 1 Play the song on your iPhone, iPod touch or iPad.

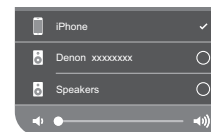
AirPlay icon is displayed on the iPhone, iPod touch or iPad screen.



### 2 Tap the AirPlay icon.

Displays a list of devices/speakers that can be played back on the same network.

- A circle is displayed to the right of AirPlay 2 compatible devices.



### 3 Tap the devices/speakers you want to use.

- Multiple AirPlay 2 compatible devices can be selected.
- Volume can be adjusted for each device individually or for all synced devices simultaneously.



## Spotify Connect function

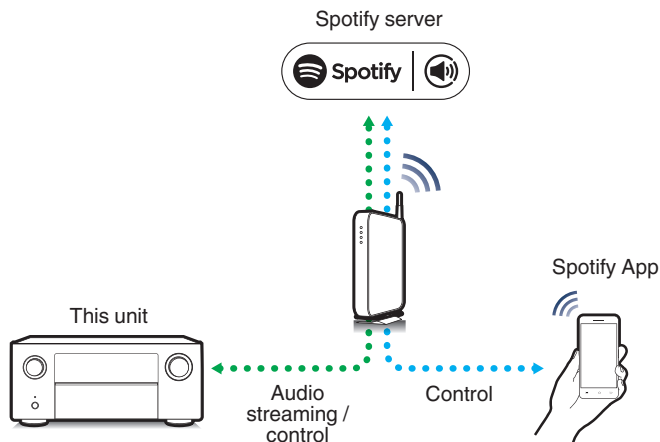
Spotify is all the music you'll ever need. Millions of songs available instantly. Just search for the music you love, or let Spotify play you something great. Spotify works on your phone, tablet, computer and home speakers. So you'll always have the perfect soundtrack for whatever you're doing. Now you can enjoy Spotify with your free account as well as Premium account.

Use your phone, tablet or computer as a remote control for Spotify.

Go to [www.spotify.com/connect](http://www.spotify.com/connect) to learn how.


The Spotify software is subject to third party licenses found here:

[www.spotify.com/connect/third-party-licenses](http://www.spotify.com/connect/third-party-licenses)



### Playing Spotify music with this unit

Download the "Spotify App" onto your Android or iOS device beforehand.

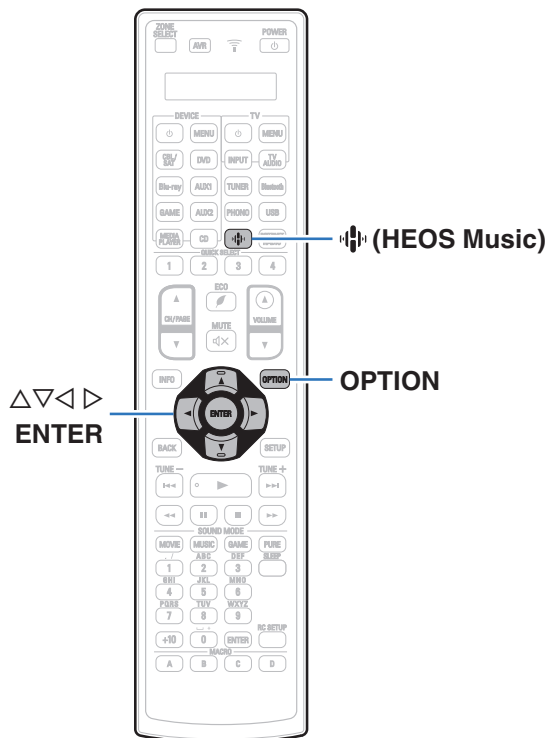
- 1 Connect the Wi-Fi settings of the iOS or Android device in the same network as this unit.**
- 2 Launch the Spotify App.**
- 3 Play back the Spotify track.**
- 4 Tap the Spotify icon  to select the unit.**  
The music will stream to this unit.



## Convenience functions

This section explains how to use convenient functions that can be used for each input source.

These functions can only be set in the MAIN ZONE.

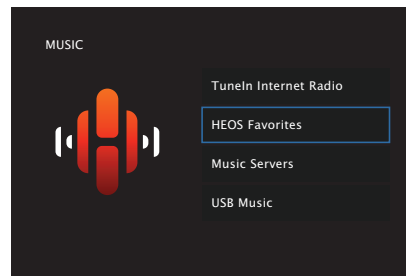


## Adding to HEOS Favorites

- 1 While content is playing, press OPTION.**  
The option menu screen is displayed.
- 2 Use  $\Delta\nabla$  to select “Add to HEOS Favorites”, then press ENTER.**

## Playing back HEOS Favorites

- 1 Press  $\blacklozenge$  (HEOS Music).**
- 2 Use  $\Delta\nabla$  to select “HEOS Favorites”, then press ENTER.**



- 3 Browse the content and select something to play.**



## Deleting a HEOS Favorites

- 1 While the HEOS Favorites content list is displayed, use  $\Delta\nabla$  to select the item you want to remove from HEOS Favorites, then press **OPTION**.
- 2 Use  $\Delta\nabla$  to select “Remove from HEOS Favorites”, then press **ENTER**.

## Adjusting the audibility of dialog and vocals (Dialog Enhancer)

This function adjusts the center channel frequency band to enhance the dialog in the movies and vocals in music for easier listening.

- 1 **Press **OPTION**.**  
An option menu screen is displayed.
  - When the input source is “HEOS Music”, an option menu for online music is displayed. Select “AVR Options...”, then press **ENTER**.
- 2 **Use  $\Delta\nabla$  to select “Dialog Enhancer”, then press **ENTER**.**  
The “Dialog Enhancer” screen is displayed.
- 3 **Use  $\triangleleft\triangleright$  to select your favorite enhancement effect.**

<b>Off</b> (Default):	Does not enhance the dialog or vocals.
<b>Low / Medium / High:</b>	Enhances the dialog and vocals.

- 4 **Press **ENTER**.**



- “Dialog Enhancer” settings are stored for each source.
- This cannot be set when the sound mode is set to “Direct”, “Virtual” or “Pure Direct”.
- This cannot be set when the input mode is set to “7.1CH IN”.



## Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Channel Level Adjust)

The volume of each channel can be changed while listening to music. You can set this for each input source.

### 1 Press OPTION.

An option menu screen is displayed.

- When the input source is "HEOS Music", an option menu for online music is displayed. Select "AVR Options...", then press ENTER.

### 2 Use $\Delta\nabla$ to select "Channel Level Adjust", then press ENTER.

The "Channel Level Adjust" screen is displayed.

### 3 Use $\Delta\nabla$ to select the channel that you wish to adjust.

### 4 Use $\triangleleft\rangle$ to adjust the volume.

---

-12.0 dB - +12.0 dB (Default: 0.0 dB)

---

### 5 Use $\Delta\nabla\triangleleft\rangle$ to select "Exit", then press ENTER.



- Select "Reset" and press ENTER if you want to restore the adjustment values of the various channels to "0.0 dB" (Default).
- Headphone volume can be adjusted when a headphone is connected.
- "Channel Level Adjust" settings are stored for each input source.
- You can only set this for speakers that output audio. In addition, you cannot set this when in the menu "HDMI Audio Out" is set to "TV". (🔗 p. 199)



## Adjusting the tone (Tone)

Adjusts the tonal quality of the sound.

### 1 Press **OPTION**.

An option menu screen is displayed.

- When the input source is "HEOS Music", an option menu for online music is displayed. Select "AVR Options...", then press **ENTER**.

### 2 Use **Δ∇** to select "Tone", then press **ENTER**.

The "Tone" screen is displayed.

### 3 Use **◀▶** to set the tone control function to on/off.

<b>On:</b>	Allow tone adjustment (bass, treble).
<b>Off</b> (Default):	Playback without tone adjustment.

### 4 Select "On" in step 3 and press **∇** to select the sound range to be adjusted.

<b>Bass:</b>	Adjust bass.
--------------	--------------

<b>Treble:</b>	Adjust treble.
----------------	----------------

### 5 Use **◀▶** to adjust the tone, then press **ENTER**.

-6 dB – +6 dB (Default : 0 dB)
--------------------------------



- "Tone" settings are stored for each input source.
- This cannot be set when the sound mode is set to "Direct" or "Pure Direct".
- This item cannot be set when "Dynamic EQ" is set to "On". (☞ p. 193)
- You cannot set this when no audio signal is input or in the menu "HDMI Audio Out" is set to "TV". (☞ p. 199)
- This cannot be set when the input mode is set to "7.1CH IN".



## Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)

This unit can display video from a different source on TV during audio playback. You can set this for each input source.

### ❑ Supported input sources:

**CD\* / Tuner / HEOS Music / Phono**

\* This cannot be set when any of the HDMI, component video or video connectors are assigned.

### 1 Press **OPTION**.

An option menu screen is displayed.

- When the input source is "HEOS Music", an option menu for online music is displayed. Select "AVR Options...", then press ENTER.

### 2 Use **Δ∇** to select "Video Select", then press **ENTER**.

The "Video Select" screen is displayed.

### 3 Use **◀▶** to select the Video Select mode.

<b>Off</b> (Default):	Disable Video Select mode.
<b>On:</b>	Enable Video Select mode.

**4** If you selected "On" in step 3, press **∇** and select "Source".

**5** Use **◀▶** to select the input source for video you want to play back, then press **ENTER**.



- "Video Select" settings are stored for each input source.





## Adjusting the picture quality for your viewing environment (Picture Mode)

- **Supported input sources :**  
**CBL/SAT / DVD / Blu-ray / Game / AUX1 /  
 AUX2 / Media Player / CD\* / TV Audio\***

\* You can set the picture mode when an HDMI, component video or video connector is assigned and "i/p Scaler" is set to anything other than "Off".  
 (☞ p. 205)

- 1 Press OPTION.**  
An option menu screen is displayed.
- 2 Use  $\Delta \nabla$  to select "Picture Mode", then press ENTER.**  
The "Picture Mode" screen is displayed.

### 3 Use $\triangleleft \triangleright$ to select the picture mode.

<b>Off</b> (Default):	No picture quality adjustment is done with this unit.
<b>Standard:</b>	The standard mode suited for most living room viewing environments.
<b>Movie:</b>	A mode suited for watching movies in a dark room such as a theater room.
<b>Vivid:</b>	A mode that makes graphic images for games, etc. brighter and more vivid.
<b>Streaming:</b>	A mode suited for low bit rate video sources.
<b>ISF Day:</b>	A mode suited for watching movies in a bright room during the day.
<b>ISF Night:</b>	A mode suited for watching movies in a dark room at night.
<b>Custom:</b>	Adjusts the picture quality manually.

### 4 Press ENTER.



- "Picture Mode" settings are stored for each input source.



## Playing the same music in all zones (All Zone Stereo)

You can play back the music being played back in MAIN ZONE simultaneously in ZONE2 and ZONE3 (another rooms).

It is useful when you want to enjoy the same music at the same time in multiple rooms during home party or when you want to play back the same background music in the entire house.

### 1 Press OPTION.

An option menu screen is displayed.

- When the input source is "HEOS Music", an option menu for online music is displayed. Select "AVR Options...", then press ENTER.

### 2 Use $\Delta\nabla$ to select "All Zone Stereo", then press ENTER.

The "All Zone Stereo" screen is displayed.

### 3 Select "Start", then press ENTER.

- The input sources for ZONE2 and ZONE3 are switched to the same input source as for MAIN ZONE, and playback starts in the All Zone Stereo mode.
- When you do not want ZONE2 or ZONE3 to participate in All Zone Stereo, press ENTER to clear the check mark and then press "Start".

## ■ Stopping the All Zone Stereo mode

### 1 During playback in All Zone Stereo mode, press OPTION.

An option menu screen is displayed.

- When the input source is "HEOS Music", an option menu for online music is displayed. Select "AVR Options...", then press ENTER.

### 2 Use $\Delta\nabla$ to select "All Zone Stereo", then press ENTER.

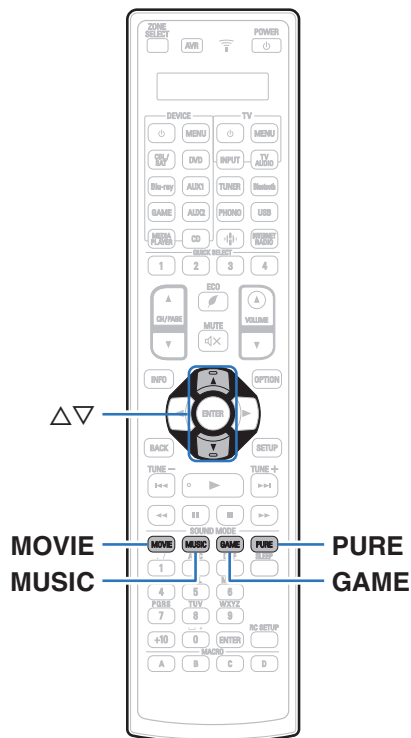
### 3 Select "Stop", then press ENTER.



- The All Zone Stereo mode is canceled even when the power supply of the MAIN ZONE is turned off.
- In the All Zone Stereo mode, only the "Multi Ch Stereo" and "Stereo" sound modes can be selected.
- When "HDMI Audio Out" is set to "TV", the All Zone Stereo mode is not available. (🔍 p. 199)
- When "Input Mode" is set to other than "7.1CH IN", the All Zone Stereo mode is available. (🔍 p. 216)



## Selecting a sound mode



This unit allows you to enjoy various kinds of surround and stereo playback modes. Disc formats such as Blu-ray Disc and DVD, as well as being supported by digital broadcasting, and even by streaming movies and music from internet-based subscription services.

This unit supports playback of almost all of these multi-channel audio formats. It also supports surround playback of audio formats other than multi-channel audio such as 2-channel stereo audio.



- For audio formats recorded on a disc, see the disc jacket or label.



## Selecting a sound mode

### 1 Press MOVIE, MUSIC or GAME to select a sound mode.

<b>MOVIE :</b>	Switches to the sound mode suitable for enjoying movies and TV programs.
<b>MUSIC :</b>	Switches to the sound mode suitable for enjoying music.
<b>GAME :</b>	Switches to the sound mode suitable for enjoying games.



- The MOVIE, MUSIC, or GAME button memorizes the last sound mode selected for its button. Pressing MOVIE, MUSIC, or GAME recalls the same sound mode as the one selected at the previous playback.
- If the content played back does not support the previously selected sound mode, the most appropriate sound mode for the content is automatically selected.

### ■ Switching the sound mode

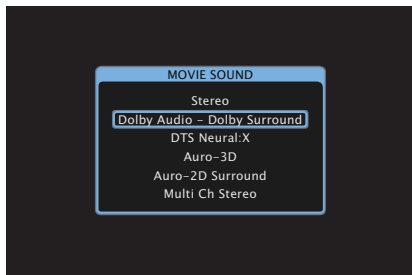
- Press MOVIE, MUSIC or GAME to display a list of the sound modes that can be selected. Each time you press MOVIE, MUSIC or GAME, the sound mode changes.
- While the list is displayed, you can also use  $\Delta$ / $\nabla$  to select a sound mode.
- Try out various sound modes and enjoy sound mode in your favorite mode.



- Please set the surround mode to Dolby Atmos/Surround when playing back Dolby Atmos encoded content. Dolby Atmos/Surround delivers the optimum playback experience from Blu-ray and streaming sources encoded with Dolby Atmos as well as channel based content. The default setting of this receiver is Dolby Atmos/Surround.



**[Example]** When MOVIE is pressed



This unit provides not only sound modes that conform to the formats recorded on discs such as Dolby and DTS, but also extended types of modes that match your speaker configuration and “original sound modes” that create atmosphere of Rock Arena and Jazz Club, etc.

## Direct playback

Sound recorded in source is played as is.

### 1 Press PURE to select “Direct”.

Direct playback begins.



- While DSD signals are played back, “DSD Direct” is displayed.



## Pure Direct playback

This mode is for playback with higher sound quality than in Direct playback mode.

This mode turns off the main unit display and analog video circuit. Doing so suppresses noise sources that affect sound quality.

### 1 Press **PURE** to select “Pure Direct”.

The display goes dark, and Pure Direct playback begins.



• In Direct and Pure Direct sound modes, the following items cannot be adjusted.

- Dialog Enhancer (🔧 p. 133)
- Tone (🔧 p. 135)
- Restorer (🔧 p. 189)
- MultEQ® XT32 (🔧 p. 192)
- Dynamic EQ (🔧 p. 193)
- Dynamic Volume (🔧 p. 194)
- Graphic EQ (🔧 p. 195)

#### NOTE

- Video signals are only output when HDMI signals are played in the Pure Direct mode.
- When the Pure Direct mode has been selected, the display turns off after about 5 seconds.

## Auto surround playback

This mode detects the type of input digital signal, and automatically selects the corresponding mode for playback.

Perform stereo playback when the input signal is PCM. When the input signal is Dolby Digital or DTS, the music is played back according to the respective channel number.

### 1 Press **PURE** to select “Auto”.

Auto surround playback begins.



## Description of sound mode types

### Dolby sound mode

Sound mode type	Description
Dolby Atmos	Please select this mode to play content encoded with Dolby Atmos. If you have selected a different sound mode previously, please select again this mode for Dolby Atmos content play back. It decodes Dolby Atmos content and its positioning data in real time and outputs audio from the appropriate speakers, creating natural audio images regardless of the speaker layout. Use ceiling speakers and/or Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers to realize a three-dimensional sound field. An immersive audio experience can be enjoyed from traditional speaker layouts that do not employ overhead or Dolby Atmos Enabled Speakers by selecting the Speaker Virtualizer feature.
Dolby TrueHD	Please select this mode to play back the contents encoded with Dolby TrueHD at 192kHz/96kHz.
Dolby Digital Plus	Please select this mode to play back the contents encoded with Dolby Digital Plus.
Dolby Digital	Please select this mode to play back the contents encoded with Dolby Digital.
Dolby Surround	This mode uses Dolby Surround Upmixer to extend various sources to natural and realistic multi channels for playback. This mode extends the audio to the ceiling and Front Wide speakers in addition to traditional 7.1-channel layout. Use ceiling speakers such as top middle speakers to realize a three-dimensional sound field.



**DTS sound mode**

Sound mode type	Description
DTS Surround	This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded in DTS.
DTS ES Dscrt6.1*1	This mode is suitable for playing discs recorded in DTS-ES. The surround back channel added using the discrete method is played as an independent channel. Since all channels are independent, the 360-degree spacial expressiveness and sound localization are enhanced.
DTS ES Mtrx6.1*1	This mode is suitable for playing discs recorded in DTS-ES. The surround back channel added to the surround-left and surround-right channels by a matrix encoder at software recording time is decoded by this unit's matrix decoder and played from each channel (surround left, surround right, surround back).
DTS 96/24	This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded in DTS 96/24.
DTS-HD	This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded in DTS-HD.
DTS Express	This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded in DTS Express.
DTS:X	This mode can be selected when playing back content encoded with DTS:X. It decodes DTS:X content and its positioning data in real time and outputs audio from the appropriate speakers, creating natural audio images regardless of the speaker layout. Use height speakers to realize a three-dimensional sound field.





Sound mode type	Description
IMAX DTS	This mode is automatically activated when playing back IMAX Enhanced content featuring a DTS bitstream. (🔍 p. 184) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Also this mode is selectable when “Surround Parameter” - “IMAX” is set to “On” in the menu and a 48 kHz sampling frequency DTS 5.1 channel signal is being input.</li> <li>When “Speaker Config.” - “Surr. Back” is set to “2 spkrs”, “Speaker Config.” - “Center” is set to “Large” or “Small”, and sound mode is set to “IMAX DTS”, surround audio is output from the surround back speaker. Audio is not output from the surround speaker.</li> <li>The bass information of speakers are not redirected to the subwoofer, but getting a better bass effect from front and center speakers by special algorithm of IMAX when the “Front” and “Center” are set to “Small”.</li> </ul>
IMAX DTS:X	This mode is automatically activated when playing back IMAX Enhanced content featuring a DTS:X bitstream. (🔍 p. 184) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The bass information of speakers are not redirected to the subwoofer, but getting a better bass effect from front and center speakers by special algorithm of IMAX when the “Front” and “Center” are set to “Small”.</li> </ul>
DTS Neural:X	This mode uses DTS Neural:X Upmixer to extend various sources to natural and realistic multi channels for playback. Use height speakers such as front height speakers to realize a three-dimensional sound field.
DTS Virtual:X*2*3	This mode uses DTS Virtual:X with virtual height and virtual surround processing to realize a three-dimensional sound field when the height speakers are not used.

\*1 This can be selected when “Speaker Config.” - “Surr. Back” is not set to “None”. (🔍 p. 239)

\*2 It cannot be selected when the input signal is Dolby Digital, Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby TrueHD or Dolby Atmos.

\*3 This can be selected when Height, Ceiling and Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers are not being used.



**Auro-3D sound mode**

Sound mode type	Description
Auro-3D	This mode uses an Auro-3D decoder to create three-dimensional audio output using the Height Channel. It is ideal for playback of signals encoded as Auro-3D with a Height Channel. If signals not encoded as Auro-3D are input, an Upmixer called the Auro-Matic is used to create highly realistic three-dimensional audio output.
Auro-2D Surround	This mode uses an Auro-3D decoder to create Surround Sound without a Height Channel. It is ideal for playback of signals encoded as Auro-3D without a Height Channel. If signals not encoded as Auro-3D are input, an Upmixer called the Auro-Matic is used to output Surround Sound.

**MPEG-H sound mode**

Sound mode type	Description
MPEG-H	This mode can be selected when MPEG-H audio is being delivered, such as in TV broadcasts. With MPEG-H, you can enjoy playback of highly realistic sound according to the format it is delivered in, such as music programs with high-quality sound and movies with multi-channel audio.

**PCM multi-channel sound mode**

Sound mode type	Description
Multi Ch In	This mode can be selected when playing multi-channel PCM/DSD sources.



**Original sound mode**

Sound mode type	Description
Multi Ch Stereo	This mode is for enjoying stereo sound from all speakers.
Rock Arena	This mode simulates the expansive sound of a live concert in an arena.
Jazz Club	This mode simulates the experience of being in an intimate jazz club.
Mono Movie	This mode works with monaural audio sources and delivers a surround sound effect. For optimum channel balance and surround sound effects, connect the monaural source to both of the front (L/R) audio inputs.
Video Game	This mode provides an exciting, dynamic surround sound effect with your favorite action video games.
Matrix	This mode adds a spacious surround sound effect with stereo music sources.
Virtual	This mode lets you experience an expansive surround sound effect when playing back through just the front (L/R) speakers only, and when listening with stereo headphones.



**Auto sound mode**

Sound mode type	Description
Auto	In this mode, the type of digital signal input, such as Dolby Digital, Dolby TrueHD, Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby Digital EX, Dolby Atmos, DTS, DTS-HD, DTS:X, DTS-ES, PCM (multi-channel) is detected, and the playback mode switches automatically to the corresponding mode. If the input signal is analog or PCM (2-channel), stereo playback is used. For Dolby Digital or DTS, the music is played back according to the respective channel number.

**Stereo sound mode**

Sound mode type	Description
Stereo	This mode plays 2-channel stereo audio with no additional surround sound processing. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Sound is output from the front left and right speakers, and subwoofer if connected.</li> <li>• When multi-channel signals are inputted, they are mixed down to 2-channel audio and are played back with no additional surround sound processing.</li> </ul>

**Direct sound mode**

Sound mode type	Description
Direct	This mode plays back audio as recorded in the source.
Pure Direct	This mode plays back an even higher quality sound than the "Direct" mode. The following circuits are stopped in order to further improve sound quality. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Display indicator circuit of the main body (display will go off.)</li> <li>• The analog video input/output switcher and processor is disabled.</li> </ul>



## Sound mode that can be selected for each input signal

- The following sound modes can be selected using the MOVIE, MUSIC and GAME buttons.
- Adjust the sound field effect with the menu “Surround Parameter” to enjoy surround sound the way you like it. (🔍 p. 181)

Input signal	Sound mode	MOVIE button	MUSIC button	GAME button
2-channel *1	Stereo	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Dolby Surround *2	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	DTS Neural:X *3	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	DTS Virtual:X *4*5	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Auro-3D *6	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Auro-2D Surround *7	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Multi Ch Stereo	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Mono Movie	<input type="radio"/>		
	Rock Arena		<input type="radio"/>	
	Jazz Club		<input type="radio"/>	
	Matrix		<input type="radio"/>	
	Video Game			<input type="radio"/>
Virtual	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	

\*1 2-channel also includes analog input.

\*2 This mode plays back 2-channel sources in 5.1, 7.1, 9.1, 11.1 or 13.1-channel playback. It cannot be selected when headphones are used or when the speaker configuration is front speakers only.

\*3 This mode plays back 2-channel sources in 5.1, 7.1, 9.1 or 11.1-channel playback. It cannot be selected when headphones are used or when the speaker configuration is front speakers only.

\*4 It cannot be selected when headphones are used, or when a speaker configuration with any height speakers is used.

\*5 It cannot be selected when the input signal is Dolby Digital, Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby TrueHD or Dolby Atmos.

\*6 It cannot be selected when headphones are used, or when a speaker configuration without front height or front Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers is used.

\*7 It cannot be selected when headphones are used, or when only front speakers are used.



Input signal	Sound mode	MOVIE button	MUSIC button	GAME button
Multi-channel *8	Stereo	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Dolby Digital	Dolby Digital	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
		Dolby Digital + Dolby Surround *9	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Dolby Digital + Neural:X *9		<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	
Dolby Digital Plus	Dolby Digital Plus	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Dolby Digital Plus + Dolby Surround *9*10	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Dolby Digital Plus + Neural:X *9	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Dolby Atmos *9*11	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Dolby TrueHD	Dolby TrueHD	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Dolby TrueHD + Dolby Surround *9*10	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Dolby TrueHD + Neural:X *9	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Dolby Atmos *9*11	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Dolby Atmos	Dolby Atmos	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>

\*8 The sound mode that can be selected differs depending on the audio format of the input signal and the number of channels.

\*9 This cannot be selected when headphones are used.

\*10 This can be selected when the input signal does not contain Dolby Atmos.

\*11 This can be selected when the input signal contains Dolby Atmos.



Input signal		Sound mode	MOVIE button	MUSIC button	GAME button
Multi-channel *8	DTS	DTS Surround	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
		DTS ES Dscrt 6.1 *9	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
		DTS ES Mtrx 6.1 *9	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
		DTS 96/24	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
		DTS + Dolby Surround *9	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
		DTS + Neural:X *9	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
		DTS + Virtual:X *4	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
		IMAX DTS *12	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
		IMAX DTS + Neural:X *9*12	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
		IMAX DTS + Virtual:X *4*12	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
DTS-HD / DTS Express		DTS-HD HI RES	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
		DTS-HD MSTR	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
		DTS Express	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
		DTS-HD + Dolby Surround *9	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
		DTS-HD + Neural:X *9	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
		DTS-HD + Virtual:X *4	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>

\*4 It cannot be selected when headphones are used, or when a speaker configuration with any height speakers is used.

\*8 The sound mode that can be selected differs depending on the audio format of the input signal and the number of channels.

\*9 This cannot be selected when headphones are used.

\*12 Selectable when "Surround Parameter" - "IMAX" is set to "On" in the menu and a 48 kHz sampling frequency DTS 5.1 channel signal is being input. (📖 p. 184)



Input signal		Sound mode	MOVIE button	MUSIC button	GAME button
Multi-channel *8	DTS:X	DTS:X	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
		DTS:X MSTR	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
		DTS:X + Virtual:X *4	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	IMAX DTS	IMAX DTS *9*13	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
		IMAX DTS + Neural:X *9*13	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
		IMAX DTS + Virtual:X *4*13	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	IMAX DTS:X	IMAX DTS:X *9*13	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
		IMAX DTS:X + Virtual:X *4*13	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	MPEG-H	MPEG-H	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	PCM multi-channel	Multi Ch In	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
		Multi Ch In 7.1 *9	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
		Multi In + Dolby Surround *9	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
		Multi In + Neural:X *9	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Multi In + Virtual:X *4		<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	

\*4 It cannot be selected when headphones are used, or when a speaker configuration with any height speakers is used.

\*8 The sound mode that can be selected differs depending on the audio format of the input signal and the number of channels.

\*9 This cannot be selected when headphones are used.

\*13 Selectable when "Surround Parameter" - "IMAX" is set to "Auto" in the menu. When "IMAX" is set to "Off", playback is normal DTS or DTS:X. (🔍 p. 184)





Input signal	Sound mode	MOVIE button	MUSIC button	GAME button
Multi-channel *8	Auro-3D *6*14	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Auro-2D Surround *7*14	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Multi Ch Stereo	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Mono Movie *14	<input type="radio"/>		
	Rock Arena *14		<input type="radio"/>	
	Jazz Club *14		<input type="radio"/>	
	Matrix *14		<input type="radio"/>	
	Video Game *14			<input type="radio"/>
	Virtual *14	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>

\*6 It cannot be selected when headphones are used, or when a speaker configuration without front height or front Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers is used.

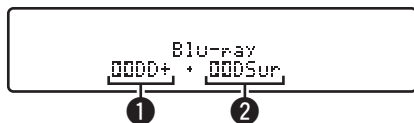
\*7 It cannot be selected when headphones are used, or when only front speakers are used.

\*8 The sound mode that can be selected differs depending on the audio format of the input signal and the number of channels.

\*14 It cannot be selected when the input signal is MPEG-H.



## ■ Views on the display



### ① Shows a decoder to be used.

- In the case of the Dolby Digital Plus decoder, “Dolby+” is displayed.

### ② Shows a decoder that creates sound output.

- “DolbySur” indicates that the Dolby Surround decoder is being used.



# HDMI Control function

A recent addition to the HDMI standard is CEC (Consumer Electronics Control), which allows control signals from one device to communicate with another device via the HDMI cable connection.

## Setting procedure

### 1 Enable the HDMI Control function of this unit.

Set "HDMI Control" to "On". (☞ p. 201)

### 2 Turn the power on for all the devices connected by HDMI cable.

### 3 Set the HDMI Control function for all devices connected by HDMI cable.

- Please consult the operating instructions for the connected devices to check the settings.
- Carry out steps 2 and 3 should any of the devices be unplugged.

### 4 Switch the television input to the HDMI input connected to this unit.

### 5 Switch the input source of this unit to check that video from the player connected by HDMI is played back correctly.

### 6 When you turn the TV's power to standby, check that the power of this unit also goes to standby.

#### NOTE

- Some functions may not operate depending on the connected TV or player. Check the owner's manual of each device for details beforehand.
- The HDMI ZONE2 function is not compatible with the HDMI Control function.
- When the HDMI ZONE2 function is used with "HDMI Control" in the menu set to "On", the HDMI ZONE2 function may not fully work.



# Smart Menu function

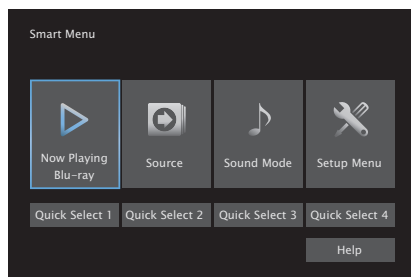
This function can be used to configure the settings of this unit, select an input source and set Internet Radio stations using the TV remote control.

- 1 **Enable the HDMI Control function of this unit and the TV.** (🔧 p. 201)
- 2 **Set “Smart Menu” to “On” on this unit.** (🔧 p. 203)
- 3 **Select “AV Receiver” in a TV menu such as “Input”\* or “Operate Connected HDMI Device”\*.**

The Smart Menu of this unit is displayed on the TV.

- This unit can be operated with the TV remote control while the Smart Menu is displayed.

\* The selection method differs depending on your TV.



## ■ Now Playing

Enjoy content from the input source currently selected on this unit.

## ■ Source

Switch the input of this unit.

If you select “HEOS Music”, you can continue to operate this unit using the TV remote control.

## ■ Sound Mode

Change the sound mode of this unit.

You can select from the following three sound modes.

<b>Surround:</b>	Surround sound playback according to the input signal.
<b>Stereo:</b>	Stereo playback.
<b>Multi Ch Stereo:</b>	Multi-channel stereo playback.



## ■ Setup Menu

Displays a setup menu for configuring the settings of this unit.

## ■ Quick Select

Calls up the “Quick Select” items registered to this unit.

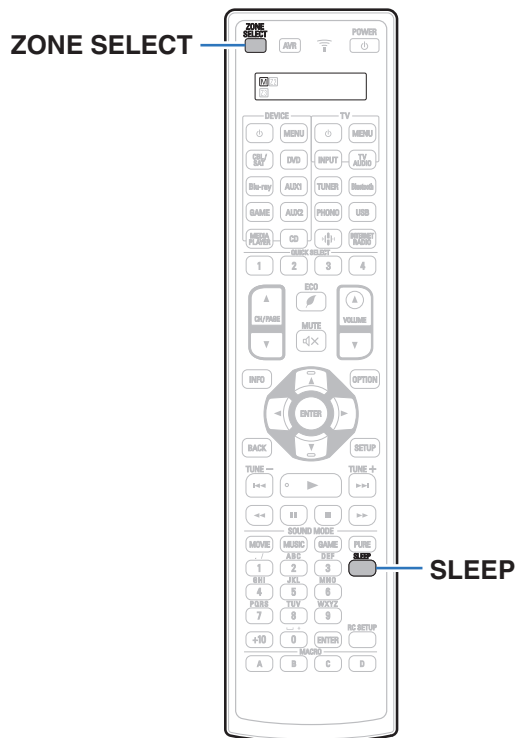
### NOTE

- If the “HDMI Control” or “Smart Menu” settings have been changed, always reset the power to connected devices after the change.
- The Smart Menu function may not work properly depending on the specifications of your TV. In this case, set “Smart Menu” to “Off”. (🔗 p. 203)



## Sleep timer function

You can have the power automatically switched to standby once a set time has elapsed. This is convenient for viewing and listening while going to sleep. The sleep timer function can be set for each zone.



## Using the sleep timer

### 1 Press ZONE SELECT to select the operating zone with the remote control.

The **[M]**, **[Z2]** or **[Z3]** indicator lights.

### 2 Press SLEEP and display the time you want to set.

- The **[S]** indicator lights up on the display and the sleep timer starts.
- You can set the sleep timer in the range from 10 to 120 minutes in steps of 10 minutes.

### ■ Checking the remaining time

Press SLEEP when the sleep timer is in operation.  
The remaining time appears on the display.

### ■ To cancel the sleep timer

Press SLEEP to select "Off".  
The **[S]** indicator on the display turns off.



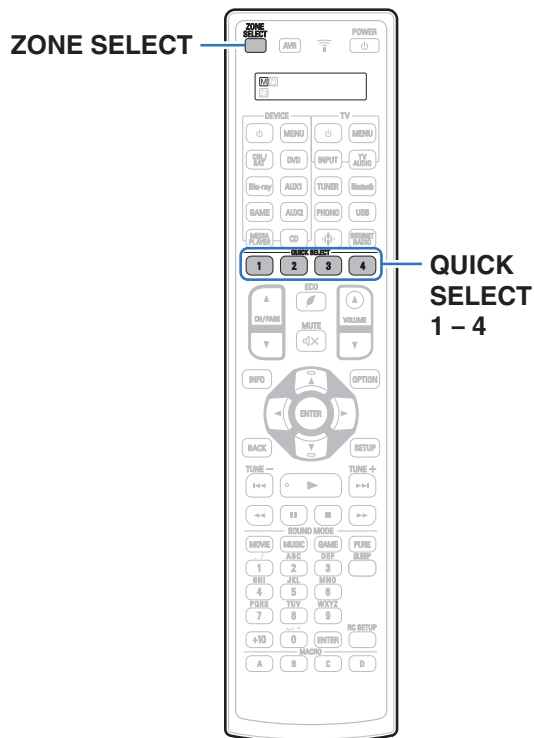
- The sleep timer setting is canceled when the unit switches to standby mode.

#### NOTE

- The sleep timer function cannot turn off the power of devices connected to this unit. To turn off the power of those connected devices, set up sleep timers on the connected devices themselves.



## Quick select plus function



Settings such as the input source, volume level and sound mode can be registered to the QUICK SELECT 1 - 4 buttons.

You can simply press one of the registered QUICK SELECT buttons in subsequent playbacks to switch to the group of saved settings in a batch. By saving frequently used settings at the QUICK SELECT 1 – 4 buttons, you will always be able to easily call up the same playback environment. The Quick Select Plus function can be memorized for each zone.



- The QUICK SELECT button on main unit can only be used to operate the MAIN ZONE.





## Calling up the settings

### 1 Press ZONE SELECT to select the operating zone with the remote control.

The [M], [Z2] or [Z3] indicator lights.

### 2 Press QUICK SELECT.

The Quick Select settings registered to the button you pressed are called up.

- The default settings for the input source and volume are as shown below.

[MAIN ZONE] / [ZONE2] / [ZONE3]

Button	Input source	Volume
QUICK SELECT 1	CBL/SAT	40
QUICK SELECT 2	Blu-ray	40
QUICK SELECT 3	Media Player	40
QUICK SELECT 4	HEOS Music	40



## Changing the settings

### 1 Set the items below to the settings you want to register.

The following settings from ① to ⑨ can be memorized for MAIN ZONE, and settings ① and ② can be memorized for ZONE2 and ZONE3.

- ① Input source (👉 p. 101)
- ② Volume (👉 p. 102)
- ③ Sound mode (👉 p. 139)
- ④ Audyssey (Audyssey MultEQ® XT32, Audyssey Dynamic EQ®, Audyssey Dynamic Volume®, Audyssey LFC™) (👉 p. 192)
- ⑤ “Restorer” (👉 p. 189)
- ⑥ “Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Channel Level Adjust)” (👉 p. 134)
- ⑦ “Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)” (👉 p. 136)
- ⑧ “Adjusting the picture quality for your viewing environment (Picture Mode)” (👉 p. 137)
- ⑨ “HDMI Video Output” (👉 p. 204)



- Press and hold QUICK SELECT while a radio station is being received is being played back with any of the following sources, the current radio station is memorized.
  - Internet Radio Station

### 2 Press ZONE SELECT to select the operating zone with the remote control.

The [M], [Z2] or [Z3] indicator lights.

### 3 Press and hold the desired QUICK SELECT until “Quick\* Memory”, “Z2 Quick\* Memory” or “Z3 Quick\* Memory” appears on the display.

The current settings will be memorized.

\* is displayed the number for the QUICK SELECT button you pressed.

### ■ Changing the Quick Select Name

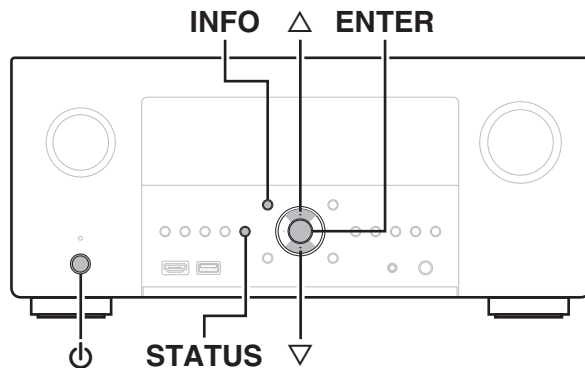
The MAIN ZONE Quick Select name displayed on the TV screen or display of this unit can be changed to a different name.

For the name change method, see “Quick Select Names”. (👉 p. 265)



## Panel lock function

To prevent accidental operation of this unit, you can disable operation of the buttons on the front panel.



### Disabling all key button operations

- 1 Press  $\odot$  while you press and hold STATUS and INFO with the unit in standby mode.
- 2 Use  $\Delta\nabla$  to select "FP/VOL LOCK On".
- 3 Press ENTER to enter the setting.  
All button operations except  $\odot$  are disabled.

### Disabling all button operations except VOLUME

- 1 Press  $\odot$  while you press and hold STATUS and INFO with the unit in standby mode.
- 2 Use  $\Delta\nabla$  to select "FP LOCK On".
- 3 Press ENTER to enter the setting.  
All button operations except  $\odot$  and VOLUME are disabled.



## Canceling the Panel lock function

- 1 Press  $\phi$  while you press and hold STATUS and INFO with the unit in standby mode.**
- 2 Use  $\Delta$ / $\nabla$  to select “FP LOCK \*Off”.**  
(\* The currently set mode.)
- 3 Press ENTER to enter the setting.**  
The Panel lock function is canceled.



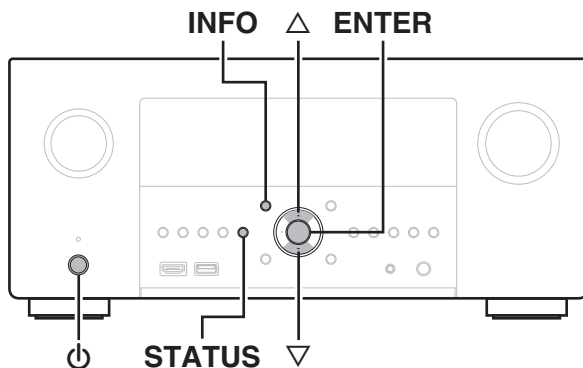
- Even when the Panel lock function is set, you can operate the unit using the remote control unit.



## Remote lock function

When connecting an IR receiver, enable the Remote lock function. When the function is enabled, you can not perform operations with the remote control unit.

By default, this function is disabled.



### Disabling the sensor function of the remote control unit

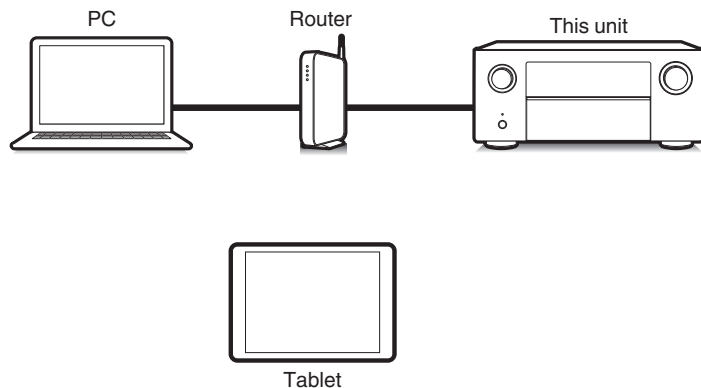
- 1 Press **⏻** while you press and hold **STATUS** and **INFO** with the unit in standby mode.
- 2 Use **Δ∇** to select “RC LOCK On”.
- 3 Press **ENTER** to enter the setting.  
The infrared light receiving function is disabled.

### Enabling the remote sensor function

- 1 Press **⏻** while you press and hold **STATUS** and **INFO** with the unit in standby mode.
- 2 Use **Δ∇** to select “RC LOCK \*Off”.  
(\* The currently set mode.)
- 3 Press **ENTER** to enter the setting.  
Infrared light receiving function on the main unit is enabled.

## Web control function

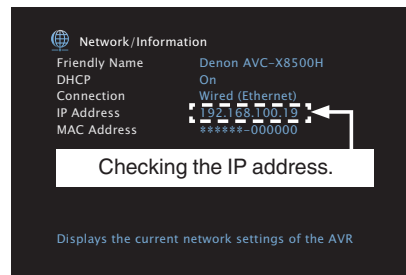
You can control this unit from a web control screen on a web browser.



- This unit and the PC or tablet need to be connected correctly to the network in order to use the web control function. (👉 p. 95)
- Depending on the settings of your security-related software, you may not be able to access this unit from your PC. If this is the case, then change the settings of the security-related software.

### Controlling the unit from a web control

- 1 Switch the “Network Control” setting to “Always On”. (👉 p. 256)
- 2 Check the IP address of this unit with “Information”. (👉 p. 251)

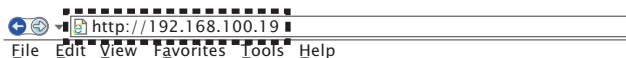


- 3 Start up the web browser.



#### 4 Enter the IP address of this unit in browser's address box.

For example, if the IP address of this unit is "192.168.100.19", enter "http://192.168.100.19".



#### 5 When the top menu is displayed on the web browser, click on the menu item you want to operate.



## Playback in ZONE2/ZONE3 (Another room)

You can operate this unit to enjoy video and audio in a room (ZONE2 and ZONE3) that is different from the room where this unit is placed (MAIN ZONE). You can simultaneously play back the same source in both the MAIN ZONE, ZONE2 and ZONE3. You can also play back separate sources in the MAIN ZONE, ZONE2 and ZONE3.

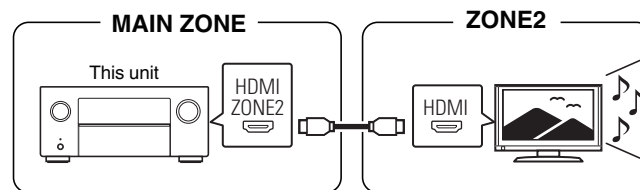
### Connecting ZONE

You can use the following three methods to play back video and audio in ZONE2 and ZONE3.

- “Connection through the HDMI ZONE2 connector” (👉 p. 168)
- “Connection through the video output connector and speaker output connector” (👉 p. 169)
- “Connection through the video output connector and external power amplifiers” (👉 p. 171)

#### ■ Connection 1 : Connection through the HDMI ZONE2 connector

When a TV is connected to the HDMI ZONE2 OUT connector, you can play back a video or audio from the device connected to the HDMI 1 – 6 IN connector in ZONE2 (HDMI ZONE2 function).



- When a TV is connected to the HDMI ZONE2 OUT connector, and the MAIN ZONE and ZONE2 are set to the same input source, the MAIN ZONE audio may be mixed down to 2-channel audio.

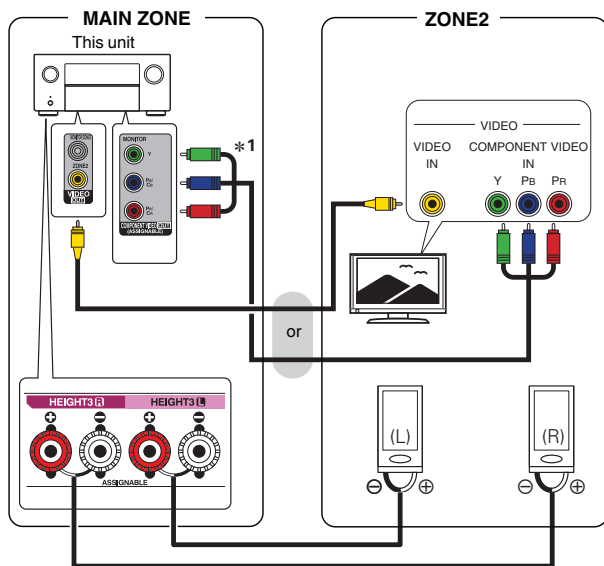




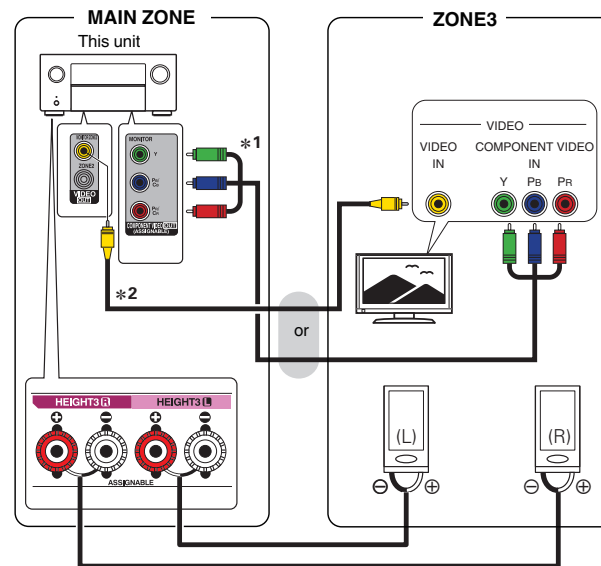
## ■ Connection 2 : Connection through the video output connector and speaker output connector

When “Assign Mode” in the menu is set to any of the following audio is output from speakers in ZONE2 or ZONE3. (🔍 p. 228)

### □ Assign Mode: 11.1ch + ZONE2



### □ Assign Mode: 11.1ch + ZONE3

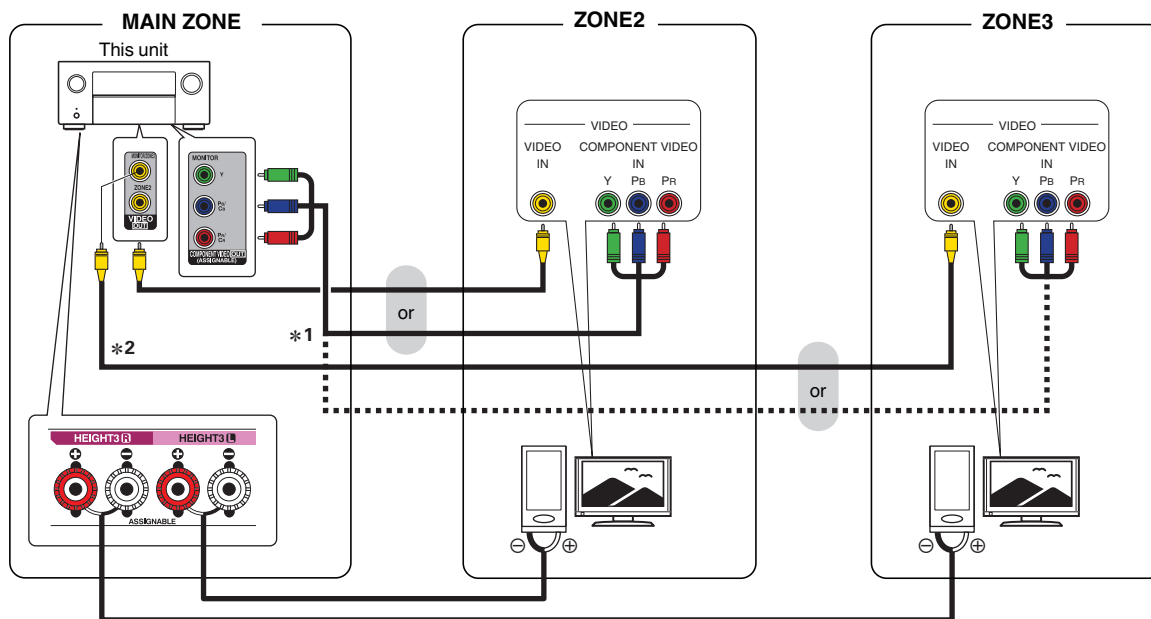


\*1 Set “ZONE2” or “ZONE3” for “Analog Video Out” - “Component” in the menu to enable use of the MAIN ZONE component video output terminal for ZONE2 or ZONE3. (🔍 p. 208)

\*2 Set “ZONE3” for “Analog Video Out” - “Video” in the menu to enable use of the MAIN ZONE video output terminal for ZONE3. (🔍 p. 208)



## Assign Mode: 11.1ch + ZONE2/3-MONO



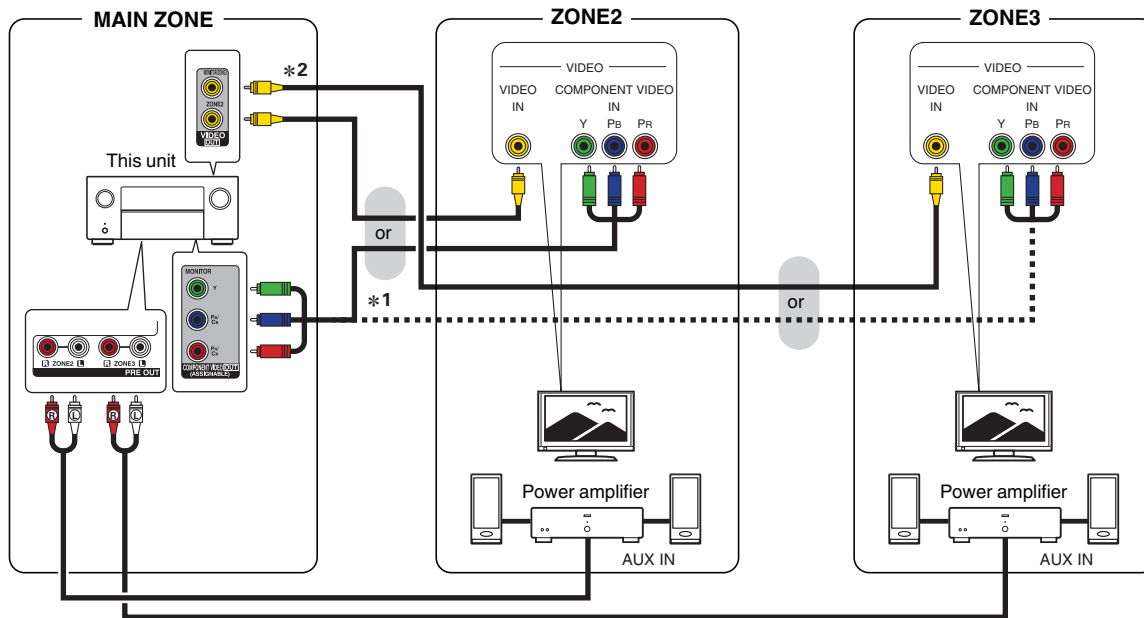
\*1 Set "ZONE2" or "ZONE3" for "Analog Video Out" - "Component" in the menu to enable use of the MAIN ZONE component video output terminal for ZONE2 or ZONE3. (☞ p. 208)

\*2 Set "ZONE3" for "Analog Video Out" - "Video" in the menu to enable use of the MAIN ZONE video output terminal for ZONE3. (☞ p. 208)



## ■ Connection 3 : Connection through the video output connector and external power amplifiers

The audio signals of this unit's ZONE2 and ZONE3 audio output connectors are played on the ZONE2 and ZONE3 power amplifiers.



\*1 Set "ZONE2" or "ZONE3" for "Analog Video Out" - "Component" in the menu to enable use of the MAIN ZONE component video output terminal for ZONE2 or ZONE3. (☞ p. 208)

\*2 Set "ZONE3" for "Analog Video Out" - "Video" in the menu to enable use of the MAIN ZONE video output terminal for ZONE3. (☞ p. 208)

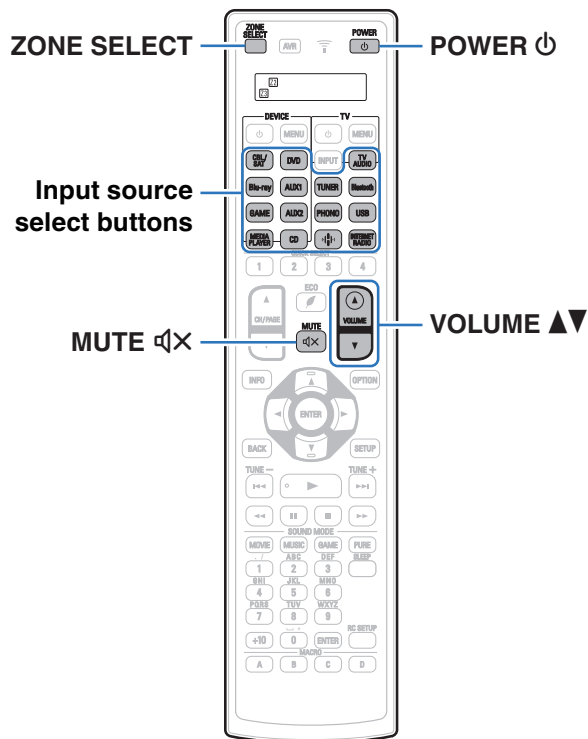




- The analog audio signal and the 2-channel PCM signal input from HDMI connector or digital connectors (OPTICAL/COAXIAL) can be played back in ZONE2.
- If you want to play back HDMI signals other than 2-channel PCM in ZONE2, set "HDMI Audio" to "PCM". (👉 p. 264)  
2-channel PCM signals are output from a device connected to the input source selected for ZONE2 and can be played back in ZONE2.  
In this case, the MAIN ZONE audio will also be converted to 2-channel PCM signals if the MAIN ZONE and ZONE2 are set to the same input source. However, depending on the playback device, the playback signal may not be converted to PCM even if this setting is configured.
- The analog audio signal and the 2-channel PCM signal input from digital connectors (OPTICAL/COAXIAL) can be played back in ZONE3.
- The menu screen is not output in ZONE2 and ZONE3.



## Playback in ZONE2/ZONE3




- 1 Press **ZONE SELECT** to switch the zone mode.  
The **Z2** or **Z3** indicator lights.
- 2 Press **POWER** to turn on the **ZONE2** or **ZONE3** power.  
The **MULTI ZONE** indicator on the display lights.
  - Power in **ZONE2** or **ZONE3** can be turned on or off by pressing **ZONE2 ON/OFF** or **ZONE3 ON/OFF** on the main unit.
- 3 Press the **input source select button** to select the input source to be played.  
The audio signal of the selected source is output to **ZONE2** or **ZONE3**.
  - To perform an operation with the main unit, press **ZONE2 SOURCE** or **ZONE3 SOURCE**. Each time you press **ZONE2 SOURCE** or **ZONE3 SOURCE**, the input source changes.



## ■ Adjusting the volume (ZONE2/ZONE3)

Use VOLUME ▲▼ to adjust the volume.

- At time of purchase, “Volume Limit” is set to “70 (-10 dB)”.  
( p. 264)





- Turn MASTER VOLUME after pressing ZONE2 SOURCE or ZONE3 SOURCE on the main unit to adjust the volume.

## ■ Turning off the sound temporarily (Muting) (ZONE2/ZONE3)

Press MUTE .

The sound is reduced to the level set at “Mute Level” in the menu.

( p. 265)



- To cancel mute, either adjust the sound volume or press MUTE  again.






## Menu map

When using menu operations, connect this unit to a TV and operate this unit while viewing the TV.

The recommended settings are configured for this unit by default. You can customize this unit based on your existing system and your preferences.


Setting items	Detailed items	Description	Page
 Audio	<b>Subwoofer Level Adjust</b>	Adjusts the subwoofer channel volume for all input sources.	180
	<b>Bass Sync</b>	Adjusts the phase shift when there is a delay in the bass (LFE) recorded on a disc.	180
	<b>Surround Parameter</b>	Adjusts surround sound parameters.	181
	<b>Restorer</b>	Expands the low and high frequency components of compressed audio content such as MP3 files to enable richer audio playback.	189
	<b>Audio Delay</b>	Compensates for incorrect timing between video and audio.	190
	<b>Volume</b>	Sets the MAIN ZONE (room where the unit is located) volume setting.	191
	<b>Audyssey</b>	Makes Audyssey MultEQ® XT32, Audyssey Dynamic EQ®, Audyssey Dynamic Volume® and Audyssey LFC™ settings.	192
	<b>Graphic EQ</b>	Uses the graphic equalizer to adjust the tone of each speaker.	195
 Video	<b>Picture Adjust</b>	Adjusts picture quality.	197
	<b>HDMI Setup</b>	Makes settings for HDMI Audio Out, HDMI Pass Through and HDMI Control settings.	199
	<b>Output Settings</b>	Makes settings for video output.	204
	<b>Analog Video Out</b>	Selects the zone that uses component video output and video output.	208
	<b>On Screen Display</b>	Configures the on-screen display settings.	208
	<b>4K/8K Signal Format</b>	Sets signal format options for your 4K or 8K video equipment.	209
	<b>TV Format</b>	Sets the video signal format to be output for the TV you are using.	211





Setting items	Detailed items	Description	Page
 Inputs	<b>Input Assign</b>	Changes input connector assignment.	212
	<b>Source Rename</b>	Changes the display name for input source.	214
	<b>Hide Sources</b>	Removes from the display input sources that are not used.	215
	<b>Source Level</b>	Adjusts the playback level of the audio input.	215
	<b>Input Select</b>	Sets the audio input mode.	216
 Speakers	<b>Audyssey® Setup</b>	The acoustic characteristics of the connected speakers and listening room are measured and the optimum settings are made automatically.	217
	<b>Manual Setup</b>	Sets up the speakers manually or changes Audyssey® Setup settings.	228
 Network	<b>Information</b>	Displays network information.	251
	<b>Connection</b>	Selects whether to connect the home network to a wireless LAN or a wired LAN.	251
	<b>Settings</b>	Used for manually setting the IP address.	254
	<b>Network Control</b>	Enables network communication in standby power mode.	256
	<b>Friendly Name</b>	The “Friendly Name” is the name of this unit displayed on the network. You can change the Friendly Name according to your preferences.	256
	<b>Diagnostics</b>	Used to check the network connection.	257





Setting items	Detailed items	Description	Page
 HEOS Account	<b>[When the user is signed out the HEOS Account]</b>		
	<b>I have a HEOS Account</b>	Selects to sign in.	258
	<b>Create Account</b>	Creates new HEOS Account.	258
	<b>Forgot Password</b>	If you forgot your password, we'll send you an email with instructions about how to reset it.	258
	<b>[When the user is signed in the HEOS Account]</b>		
	<b>Signed in As</b>	Displays your HEOS Account.	258
	<b>Change Location</b>	Selects your location.	258
	<b>Change Password</b>	Changes your HEOS Account Password.	258
	<b>Delete Account</b>	Deletes your HEOS Account.	258
	<b>Sign Out</b>	Sign out of your HEOS Account.	258

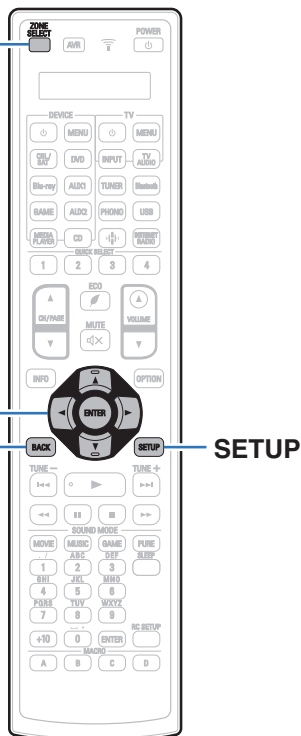


Setting items	Detailed items	Description	Page
 General	<b>Language</b>	Changes the language of the display on the TV screen.	259
	<b>ECO</b>	Configures the ECO Mode and Auto Standby energy-saving functions.	259
	<b>ZONE2 Setup/ ZONE3 Setup</b>	Makes settings for audio playback with ZONE2 and ZONE3.	263
	<b>Zone Rename</b>	Changes the display title of each zone to one you prefer.	265
	<b>Quick Select Names</b>	Changes the Quick Select Name display title to one you prefer.	265
	<b>Trigger Out 1/ Trigger Out 2</b>	Select the conditions for activating trigger out function.	266
	<b>Front Display</b>	Makes settings related to the display on this unit.	266
	<b>Firmware</b>	Checks for the latest firmware information about updates and upgrades, updates the firmware, and sets up the notification message display.	267
	<b>Information</b>	Shows information about this unit settings, input signals, etc.	270
	<b>Remote ID</b>	Sets the ID of the remote control code to which this unit responds.	272
	<b>Usage Data</b>	Selects whether or not to send anonymous usage data to Denon.	272
	<b>Save &amp; Load</b>	Save and restore device settings by using a USB memory device.	273
<b>Setup Lock</b>	Protects settings from inadvertent changes.	273	
 Setup Assistant	<b>Begin Setup...</b>	Performs basic installation/connections/settings from the beginning according to the guidance indicated on the TV screen.	Page 9 of the separate manual "Quick Start Guide"
	<b>Language Select</b>	Sets individual setting items according to the guidance displayed on the TV screen.	
	<b>Speaker Setup</b>		
	<b>Speaker Calibration</b>		
	<b>Network Setup</b>		
	<b>TV Audio Connection</b>		
	<b>Input Setup</b>		
	<b>Mobile Apps</b>		



ZONE SELECT

△▽◀▶  
ENTER  
BACK



SETUP

## Menu operations

- 1 Press ZONE SELECT on the remote control unit to set the operating zone to the MAIN ZONE.**  
The **[M]** indicator lights.
- 2 Press SETUP.**  
The menu is displayed on the TV screen.
- 3 Use △▽▶ to select the menu to be set or operated, then press ENTER.**
- 4 Use ◀▶ to change to desired setting.**
- 5 Press ENTER to enter the setting.**
  - To return to the previous item, press BACK.
  - Exiting the menu, press SETUP while the menu is displayed. The menu display disappears.



# Audio

Make audio-related settings.

## Subwoofer Level Adjust

Adjusts the subwoofer channel volume for all input sources.

### ■ Subwoofer 1 / Subwoofer 2

Adjusts the volume level for the Subwoofer 1 and Subwoofer 2.

**-12.0 dB – +12.0 dB** (Default: 0.0 dB)



- This setting is also reflected in the subwoofer channel level in the “Speakers” - “Levels” menu settings. (📖 p. 245)

## Bass Sync

For contents recorded in multi-channel such as Blu-ray discs, the recorded low frequency effects (LFE) may be out of synch and delayed. This function corrects such a delay of low frequency effects (LFE).

**0 ms – 16 ms** (Default : 0 ms)



- How low frequency effects (LFE) are delayed differ according to the disc. Set this to the desired value.
- “Bass Sync” settings are stored for each input source.
- This can be set when the LFE signal is included in the input signal.
- This cannot be set when the input mode is set to “7.1CH IN”.



## Surround Parameter

You can adjust the surround audio sound field effects to match your preferences.

The items (parameters) that can be adjusted depend on the signal being input and the currently set sound mode.



- Some setting items cannot be set while playback is stopped. Make the settings during playback.
- “Surround Parameter” settings are stored for each sound mode.

## ■ Cinema EQ

Gently softens the upper treble range of movie soundtracks to reduce possible harshness and improve clarity.

---

**On:** “Cinema EQ” is used.

---

**Off**  
(Default): “Cinema EQ” is not used.

---



- This item cannot be set when sound mode is “Direct”, “Pure Direct”, “Stereo” and “Original sound mode”.

## ■ Loudness Management

This sets whether to output as specified in “Dynamic Compression” or output directly without compressing the dynamic range of audio recorded in the disc.

---

**On**  
(Default):

---

Outputs are given based on enabling the settings made in “Dynamic Compression” and Dialogue normalization function.

---

**Off:**

---

“Dynamic Compression” settings and Dialogue normalization are disabled, and the signals on the disc are output as is.

---



- “Loudness Management” can be set when Dolby Digital, Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby TrueHD and Dolby Atmos signal is input.



## ■ Dynamic Compression

Compress dynamic range (difference between loud and soft sounds).

**Auto:** Automatic dynamic range compression on/off control according to source.

**Low / Medium / High:** These set the compression level.

**Off:** Dynamic range compression is always off.



- “Dynamic Compression” can be set when Dolby Digital, Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby TrueHD, Dolby Atmos or DTS signal is input.
- The default setting is “Off”. When the input signal is the Dolby TrueHD or Dolby Atmos source, the default setting is “Auto”.
- “Auto” cannot be set when inputting a DTS signal.

## ■ Dialog Control

Adjust the volume of dialog in movies, vocals in music, etc. so these can be heard more easily.

**0 – 6** (Default : 0)



- This can be set when a DTS:X signal that is compatible with the Dialog Control function is input.

## ■ Low Frequency Effects

Adjust the low frequency effects level (LFE).

### □ When “Input Mode” is set other than to “7.1CH IN”

**-10 dB – 0 dB** (Default: 0 dB)

### □ When “Input Mode” is set to “7.1CH IN”

**0 dB / +5 dB / +10 dB / +15 dB** (Default: +15 dB)



- This can be set when the LFE signal is included in the input signal.
- This item can be selected when a Dolby Digital or DTS signal or DVD-Audio is played.
- For proper playback of the different sources, we recommend setting to the values below.
  - Dolby Digital sources: 0 dB
  - DTS movie sources: 0 dB
  - DTS music sources: -10 dB



## ■ Center Spread

Center Spread expands the center channel signal to left and right front speakers to create a wider frontal audio image for the listener. It is optimized and designed primary for playback of stereo music content.

<b>On:</b>	Use "Center Spread".
<b>Off</b> (Default):	Do not use "Center Spread".



- You can set this when sound mode is "Dolby Surround".

## ■ Speaker Virtualizer

The Speaker Virtualizer enhances the surround and height speaker channels to create an enveloping virtual surround effect.

<b>On</b> (Default):	Enables "Speaker Virtualizer".
-------------------------	--------------------------------

<b>Off:</b>	Disables "Speaker Virtualizer".
-------------	---------------------------------



- You can set this when the sound mode is "Dolby Atmos", "Dolby Surround" or sound mode that has "+Dolby Surround" in the sound mode name.
- Usable when not using height, ceiling or Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers, or when not using surround speakers.
- Audio is not output from the surround back speaker if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "On" when "Speaker Config." - "Surr. Back" is set to "1 spkr" in the menu.
- Audio is not output from the front wide speaker if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "On".



## ■ DTS Neural:X

DTS Neural:X Expands the non-object based audio signals and optimizes them for your speaker configuration.

<b>On</b> (Default):	Use "DTS Neural:X".
<b>Off:</b>	Do not use "DTS Neural:X".



- You can set this when sound mode is "DTS:X" or "DTS:X MSTR".

## ■ IMAX

Sets the audio mode for IMAX playback.

<b>Auto</b> (Default):	Automatically enables the IMAX mode when IMAX content is detected.
<b>On:</b>	Enables IMAX settings for IMAX streaming content when automatic detection is not possible.
<b>Off:</b>	Disables the IMAX mode.



- In case of streaming the IMAX contents from online streaming service using TV Apps or player Apps (such as Blu-ray player's App), this unit may not detect the signal as IMAX contents automatically. In this case, you can enable IMAX mode by setting this parameter to "On" manually.
- This setting can only be turned "On" when DTS 5.1 channel content recorded as IMAX DTS is input.
- This setting cannot be set when headphones are used.





## ■ IMAX Audio Settings

You can configure special IMAX audio settings to recreate the conditions of an IMAX theater.

**Auto**  
(Default): Applies the optimized speaker settings to reproduce similar to the IMAX theater environment.

**Manual:** Manually adjusts the “High Pass Filter”, “Low Pass Filter” and “Subwoofer Mode”.



- You can set this when sound mode is “IMAX DTS” or “IMAX DTS:X”.
- “Speakers” - “Crossovers”, “Bass” - “Subwoofer Mode” and “LPF for LFE” in the menu cannot be applied during IMAX playback.

## ■ High Pass Filter

Set the high pass filter cutoff frequency for all speakers during IMAX playback.

**40 Hz / 60 Hz / 70 Hz / 80 Hz / 90 Hz / 100 Hz / 110 Hz / 120 Hz / 150 Hz / 180 Hz / 200 Hz / 250 Hz** (Default: 80 Hz)



- You can set this when “IMAX Audio Settings” is set to “Manual”.

## ■ Low Pass Filter

Set the low pass filter cutoff frequency of the LFE signal during IMAX playback.

**70 Hz / 80 Hz / 90 Hz / 100 Hz / 110 Hz / 120 Hz / 150 Hz / 180 Hz / 200 Hz / 250 Hz** (Default: 120 Hz)



- You can set this when “IMAX Audio Settings” is set to “Manual”.

## ■ Subwoofer Mode

Set the bass signal to be played by the subwoofer during IMAX playback.

**On:** The low range signal of all speakers is added to the LFE signal output from the subwoofer. The LFE signal and the bass component of each speaker is played.

**Off**  
(Default): Only the LFE signal is played.



- You can set this when “IMAX Audio Settings” is set to “Manual”.



## ■ Auro-Matic 3D Preset

Selects the Auro-Matic 3D Preset for fine tuning the Auro-3D experience to specific audio material.

<b>Small:</b>	“Small” is ideal for pop and chamber music.
<b>Medium (Default):</b>	“Medium” is best used on jazz music or typical movies and TV shows.
<b>Large:</b>	“Large” is ideal for recordings that were recorded in large spaces (e.g. orchestral recording).
<b>Movie:</b>	“Movie” is ideal for experiencing a large-cinema effect for watching movies (e.g. action movies with big explosions).
<b>Speech:</b>	“Speech” is ideal for recordings which are mostly dialog (e.g. news broadcast), and that have virtually no inherent spatial information.



- You can set this when the sound mode is set to Auro-3D.
- This cannot be set if the input signal contains Auro-3D signals containing a Height channel.

## ■ Auro-Matic 3D Strength

Changes the level of the up-mixed channels in relation to the original input signal.

The value ranges from 1 (no up-mixing) to 16 (Maximum level, providing maximum effect).

**1 - 16** (Default:10)



- You can set this when the sound mode is set to Auro-3D.
- This cannot be set if the input signal contains Auro-3D signals containing a Height channel.



## ■ Auro-3D Mode

Select how to output sound to all speakers when Auro-3D decoding is active.

### Channel Expansion (Default):

Incoming Auro-3D content is expanded to additional speakers. All speakers configured for Auro-3D will output sound.

### Direct:

Incoming Auro-3D content is sent directly to each corresponding channel. No content is sent to additional speakers.



- You can set this when the input signal contains Auro-3D signal and sound mode is set to Auro-3D.

## ■ Delay Time

Adjust the audio delay time against video to extend the sound field image.

**0 ms – 300 ms** (Default: 30 ms)



- You can set this when the sound mode is “Matrix”.

## ■ Effect Level

Adjust the sound effect level of the current sound mode.

**1 – 15** (Default: 10)



- This item can be set when sound mode is “Rock Arena”, “Jazz Club”, “Mono Movie” and “Video Game”.
- Set to a lower level if the positioning and sense of phase of the surround signals seems unnatural.



## ■ Room Size

Determine size of acoustic environment.

<b>Small:</b>	Simulate acoustics of a small room.
<b>Medium small:</b>	Simulate acoustics of a medium-small room.
<b>Medium (Default):</b>	Simulate acoustics of a medium room.
<b>Medium large:</b>	Simulate acoustics of a medium-large room.
<b>Large:</b>	Simulate acoustics of a large room.



- This item can be set when sound mode is “Rock Arena”, “Jazz Club”, “Mono Movie” and “Video Game”.
- “Room Size” does not indicate the size of the room in which sources are played.

## ■ Speaker Select

Makes settings for the speakers outputting sound.

<b>Floor:</b>	Plays back without height speakers.
<b>Floor &amp; Height (Default):</b>	Plays back with height speakers.



- This can be set when the sound mode is the original sound mode.

## ■ Subwoofer

Turn subwoofer output on and off.

<b>On (Default):</b>	The subwoofer is used.
<b>Off:</b>	The subwoofer is not used.



- You can set this when the sound mode is “Direct” or “Stereo” and in the menu “Subwoofer Mode” is set to “LFE+Main”. (🔗 p. 247)

## ■ Set Defaults

The “Surround Parameter” settings are returned to the default settings.



## Restorer

Compressed audio formats such as MP3, WMA (Windows Media Audio) and MPEG-4 AAC reduce the amount of data by eliminating signal components that are hard for the human ear to hear. The “Restorer” function generates the signals eliminated upon compression, restoring the sound to conditions near those of the original sound before compression. It also restores the original bass characteristics for a rich and expanded tonal range.

### ■ Mode

<b>High:</b>	Optimized mode for compressed sources with very weak highs (64 kbps and under).
<b>Medium:</b>	Apply suitable bass and treble boost for all compressed sources (96 kbps and under).
<b>Low:</b>	Optimized mode for compressed sources with normal highs (96 kbps and over).
<b>Off:</b>	Do not use “Restorer”.



- This item can be set with analog signals or PCM signal (Sample Rate = 44.1/48 kHz) is input.
- This item default setting for “HEOS Music” is “Low”. All others are set to “Off”.
- This cannot be set when the sound mode is set to “Direct” or “Pure Direct”.
- This cannot be set when the input mode is set to “7.1CH IN”.
- “Restorer” settings are stored for each input source.



## Audio Delay

Compensates for incorrect timing between video and audio.



- Audio Delay for game mode can be set when "Video Mode" is set to "Auto" or "Game". (🔗 p. 205)
- "Audio Delay" settings are stored for each input source.
- This cannot be set when the input mode is set to "7.1CH IN".

## Auto Lip Sync

Automatically adjusts the audio processing time to compensate for delays in audio/video timing from TV compatible with Auto Lip Sync.

<b>On</b> (Default):	Correct automatically.
<b>Off:</b>	Do not correct automatically.



- Automatic correction may not be performed depending on the specifications of your TV even when "Auto Lip Sync" is set to "On".

## Adjust

The timing mismatch between the picture and sound needs to be corrected manually.

**0 ms – 500 ms** (Default : 0 ms)



- You can also finely adjust the delay correction value set by "Auto Lip Sync".
- Adjust for game mode can be set when "Video Mode" is set to "Auto" or "Game". (🔗 p. 205)



## Volume

Set the MAIN ZONE (room where the unit is located) volume setting.

### ■ Scale

Set how volume is displayed.

**0 - 98**  
(Default): Display in the range 0 (Min) to 98.

**-79.5 dB - 18.0 dB:** Display ---dB (Min), in the range -79.5 dB to 18.0 dB.



- “Scale” settings are reflected in all the zones.

### ■ Limit

Make a setting for maximum volume.

**60 (-20 dB) / 70 (-10 dB) / 80 (0 dB)**

**Off** (Default)



- The dB value is displayed when the “Scale” setting is “-79.5 dB - 18.0 dB”. (🔍 p. 191)

### ■ Power On Level

Define the volume setting that is active when the power is turned on.

**Last**  
(Default): Use the memorized setting from the last session.

**Mute:** Always use the muting on condition when power is turned on.

**1 - 98 (-79 dB - 18 dB) :** The volume is adjusted to the set level.



- The dB value is displayed when the “Scale” setting is “-79.5 dB - 18.0 dB”. (🔍 p. 191)

### ■ Mute Level

Set the amount of attenuation when muting is on.

**Full**  
(Default): The sound is muted entirely.

**-40 dB :** The sound is attenuated by 40 dB down.

**-20 dB :** The sound is attenuated by 20 dB down.



## Audyssey®

Set Audyssey MultEQ® XT32, Audyssey Dynamic EQ®, Audyssey Dynamic Volume® and Audyssey LFC™. These can be selected after Audyssey® Setup has been performed.

For additional information on Audyssey technology, please see “Explanation of terms” (📖 p. 327).



- “MultEQ® XT32”, “Dynamic EQ”, “Reference Level Offset”, “Dynamic Volume”, “Audyssey LFC™” and “Containment Amount” settings are stored for each input source.
- When the sound mode is in the “Direct” or “Pure Direct” mode, “MultEQ® XT32”, “Dynamic EQ”, “Dynamic Volume” and “Audyssey LFC™” settings cannot be configured.
- When the sound mode is in “DTS Virtual:X” or sound mode that have “+Virtual:X” in the sound mode name, “Dynamic EQ”, “Dynamic Volume” and “Audyssey LFC™” settings cannot be configured.
- This item cannot be selected when a DTS:X format with a sampling frequency of over 48 kHz is input.
- This cannot be set when the input mode is set to “7.1CH IN”.

## ■ MultEQ® XT32

MultEQ® XT32 compensates for both time and frequency characteristics of the listening area based on Audyssey® Setup measurement results. Selection is done from three types of compensation curves. We recommend the “Reference” setting.

<b>Reference (Default):</b>	Selects the default calibrated setting with a slight roll off at high frequencies, which is optimized for movies.
<b>L/R Bypass:</b>	Selects the reference setting, but bypasses MultEQ® XT32 on the front left and right speakers.
<b>Flat:</b>	Selects the calibrated setting which is optimized for small rooms where your listening position is closer to the speakers.
<b>Off:</b>	Do not use “MultEQ® XT32”.



- When using headphones, “MultEQ® XT32” is automatically set to “Off”.





## Dynamic EQ

Solves the problem of deteriorating sound quality as volume is decreased by taking into account human perception and room acoustics.

Works with MultEQ® XT32.

<b>On</b> (Default):	Use "Dynamic EQ".
<b>Off:</b>	Do not use "Dynamic EQ".



- When the menu "Dynamic EQ" setting is "On", it is not possible to do "Tone" adjustment. (🔧 p. 135)
- This item cannot be set when "MultEQ® XT32" in the menu is set to "Off".

## Reference Level Offset

Audyssey Dynamic EQ® is referenced to the standard film mix level. It makes adjustments to maintain the reference response and surround envelopment when the volume is turned down from 0 dB. However, film reference level is not always used in music or other non-film content. Dynamic EQ Reference Level Offset provides three offsets from the film level reference (5 dB, 10 dB, and 15 dB) that can be selected when the mix level of the content is not within the standard. Recommended setting levels for content are shown below.

<b>0 dB (Film Reference)</b> (Default):	Optimized for content such as movies.
<b>5 dB :</b>	Select this setting for content that has a very wide dynamic range, such as classical music.
<b>10 dB :</b>	Select this setting for jazz or other music that has a wider dynamic range. This setting should also be selected for TV content as that is usually mixed at 10 dB below film reference.
<b>15 dB :</b>	Select this setting for pop/rock music or other program material that is mixed at very high listening levels and has a compressed dynamic range.



- Setting is enabled when "Dynamic EQ" is "On". (🔧 p. 193)



## Dynamic Volume

Solves the problem of large variations in volume level between TV, movies and other content (between quiet passages and loud passages, etc.) by automatically adjusting to the user's preferred volume setting.

Works with MultEQ® XT32.

<b>Heavy:</b>	Most adjustment to softest and loudest sounds.
<b>Medium:</b>	Medium adjustment to loudest and softest sound.
<b>Light:</b>	Least adjustment to loudest and softest sounds.
<b>Off</b> (Default):	Do not use "Dynamic Volume".



- If "Dynamic Volume" is set to "Yes" in "Audyssey® Setup", the setting is automatically changed to "Medium". (🔗 p. 217)
- This item cannot be set when "MultEQ® XT32" in the menu is set to "Off".

## Audyssey LFC™

Adjusts the low frequency band to prevent bass and vibration from being conveyed to neighboring rooms.

Works with MultEQ® XT32.

<b>On:</b>	Use "Audyssey LFC™".
<b>Off</b> (Default):	Do not use "Audyssey LFC™".



- This item cannot be set when "MultEQ® XT32" in the menu is set to "Off".

## Containment Amount

Adjusts the amount of low frequency containment. Use higher settings if you have close neighbors.

1 – 7 (Default : 4)



- This can be set when "Audyssey LFC™" in the menu is set to "On".



## Graphic EQ

Uses the graphic equalizer to adjust the tone of each speaker.



- Speakers for which "Graphic EQ" can be set differ according to the sound mode.
- This can be set when "MultEQ® XT32" setting is "Off". (👉 p. 192)
- This cannot be set when the sound mode is set to "Direct" or "Pure Direct".
- If you are using headphones, you can set the equalizer for headphones. (👉 p. 195)
- This cannot be set when the input mode is set to "7.1CH IN".

### ■ Graphic EQ / Headphone EQ

Set whether to use the graphic equalizer or not.

<b>On:</b>	Use the graphic equalizer.
<b>Off</b> (Default):	Do not use the graphic equalizer.



- "Headphone EQ" is set in the menu when headphones are used.

### ■ Speaker Selection

Select whether to adjust tones for individual speakers or for all speakers.

<b>All:</b>	Adjust all speaker tones together.
<b>Left/Right</b> (Default):	Adjust the left and right speaker tones together.
<b>Each:</b>	Adjust the tone for each speaker.

### ■ Adjust EQ

Adjust tonal balance for each frequency band.

1. Select the speaker.
2. Select the adjustment frequency band.  
**63 Hz / 125 Hz / 250 Hz / 500 Hz / 1 kHz / 2 kHz / 4 kHz / 8 kHz / 16 kHz**
3. Adjust the level.  
**-20.0 dB – +6.0 dB** (Default: 0.0 dB)



- Front Dolby, Surround Dolby and Back Dolby speakers can only be set when 63 Hz/125 Hz/250 Hz/500 Hz/1 kHz.



## ■ Curve Copy

Copy the Flat correction curve created in Audyssey® Setup.



- “Curve Copy” is displayed after Audyssey® Setup has been performed.
- “Curve Copy” cannot be used when using headphones.

## ■ Set Defaults

The “Graphic EQ” settings are returned to the default settings.



# Video

Make video-related settings.

## Picture Adjust

Picture quality can be adjusted.



- This can be set when the “Video Conversion” setting is “On”. (🔗 p. 205)
- This can be set when “HDMI”, “COMP” or “VIDEO” is assigned for each input source. (🔗 p. 213)
- “Contrast”, “Brightness”, “Saturation”, “Noise Reduction” and “Enhancer” can be set when “Picture Mode” is set to “Custom”. (🔗 p. 197)
- “Picture Adjust” settings are stored for each input source.
- “Picture Adjust” cannot be set when 4K or 8K signals are input.
- “Picture Adjust” cannot be set when sound mode is set to “IMAX DTS” or “IMAX DTS:X”.

## Picture Mode

Select the desired picture mode according to the video content and your viewing environment.

<b>Standard:</b>	The standard mode suited for most living room viewing environments.
<b>Movie:</b>	A mode suited for watching movies in a dark room such as a theater room.
<b>Vivid:</b>	A mode that makes graphic images for games, etc. brighter and more vivid.
<b>Streaming:</b>	A mode suited for low bit rate video sources.
<b>ISF Day:</b>	A mode suited for watching movies in a bright room during the day.
<b>ISF Night:</b>	A mode suited for watching movies in a dark room at night.
<b>Custom:</b>	Adjusts the picture quality manually.
<b>Off (Default):</b>	No picture quality adjustment is done with this unit.





- The two special adjustment modes, “ISF Day” and “ISF Night”, should be used by a certified technician to adjust the color calibration to match the installation conditions. We recommend that the settings and adjustments be carried out by an ISF-certified technician.
- These settings can also be configured using “Picture Mode” in the option menu. (🔧 p. 197)

## ■ Contrast

Adjust picture contrast.

-50 – +50 (Default : 0)

## ■ Brightness

Adjust picture brightness.

-50 – +50 (Default : 0)

## ■ Saturation

Adjust picture chroma level (color saturation).

-50 – +50 (Default : 0)

## ■ Noise Reduction

Reduce overall video noise.

Low / Medium / High / Off (Default : Off)

## ■ Enhancer

Emphasize picture sharpness.

0 – +12 (Default : 0)



## HDMI Setup

Make settings for HDMI Audio Out, HDMI Pass Through and HDMI Control settings.

### NOTE

- When “HDMI Pass Through” and “HDMI Control” is set to “On”, it consumes more standby power. (“HDMI Pass Through” (🔧 p. 199), “HDMI Control” (🔧 p. 201)) If you are not using this unit for an extended period, it is recommended that you unplug the power cord from the power outlet.

## HDMI Audio Out

Select HDMI audio output device.

<b>AVR</b> (Default):	Play back through speakers connected to the unit.
<b>TV:</b>	Play back through TV connected to the unit.



- When the HDMI Control function is activated, priority is given to the TV audio setting. (🔧 p. 155)
- When the power of this unit is on and “HDMI Audio Out” is set to “TV”, audio is output as 2-channel from the HDMI OUT connector.

## Vertical Stretch

Sets whether video signals are vertically stretched or not.

<b>On:</b>	Stretches video signals vertically.
<b>Off</b> (Default):	Does not stretch video signals vertically.



- “Vertical Stretch” can be set when “i/p Scaler” is set to anything other than “Off”. (🔧 p. 205)

## HDMI Pass Through

Selects how this unit will transmit HDMI signals to the HDMI output in standby power mode.

<b>On:</b>	Transmits the selected HDMI input through this unit’s HDMI output when this unit is in standby power mode.
<b>Off</b> (Default):	No HDMI signals are transmitted through this unit’s HDMI output in standby power mode.



## ■ Pass Through Source

Sets the HDMI connector that inputs HDMI signals when in standby.

<b>Last</b> (Default):	The most recently used input source will go into standby mode.
---------------------------	--

<b>CBL/SAT / DVD / Blu-ray / Game / Media Player / AUX1 / AUX2/ CD*</b> :	Pass through the selected input source.
---	---

\*“Pass Through Source” can be set when any of the HDMI connectors is assigned to “CD” for the input source in the “Input Assign” setting. (☞ p. 212)



- “Pass Through Source” can be set when “HDMI Control” is set to “On” or “HDMI Pass Through” is set to “On”. (“HDMI Pass Through” (☞ p. 199), “HDMI Control” (☞ p. 201))

## ■ RC Source Select

Set whether to allow this unit to be turned on by the input source select button on the remote control when this unit is on standby.

<b>Power On + Source</b> (Default):	The power of this unit is turned on and the input source changes.
--	---

<b>Source Select Only:</b>	The HDMI input source changes while this unit is on standby. The power display of this unit blinks when the input source select button of the remote control is pressed.
----------------------------	--



- “RC Source Select” can be set when “HDMI Control” is set to “On” or “HDMI Pass Through” is set to “On”. (“HDMI Pass Through” (☞ p. 199), “HDMI Control” (☞ p. 201))





## ■ HDMI Control

You can link operations with devices connected to HDMI and compatible with HDMI Control.

**On:** Use HDMI Control function.

**Off**  
(Default): Do not use HDMI Control function.



- If using the HDMI Control function, connect a TV compatible with HDMI control to the HDMI MONITOR 1 connector.
- Please consult the operating instructions for each connected device to check the settings.
- Refer to “HDMI Control function” for more information about the HDMI Control function. (📖 p. 155)

### NOTE

- If the “HDMI Control” settings have been changed, always reset the power to connected devices after the change.

## ■ ARC

On the TV connected to the HDMI MONITOR 1 connector, set whether to receive sound from the TV via HDMI.

**On:** Use ARC function.

**Off**  
(Default): Do not use ARC function.



- You can adjust the volume of this unit using the TV remote control.
- If using this function, use a TV compatible with ARC (Audio Return Channel) and enable the HDMI Control function of the TV.
- When “HDMI Control” is set to “On”, the “ARC” settings automatically switch “On”. (📖 p. 201)

### NOTE

- If the “ARC” settings have been changed, always reset the power to connected devices after the change.
- Using an eARC function-compatible television enables audio playback from the speaker connected to this unit, regardless of “ARC” settings in the menu.




## ■ TV Audio Switching

Sets automatic switching to the “TV Audio” input when a TV connected via HDMI sends an appropriate CEC control command to this unit.


<b>On</b> (Default):	Select the “TV Audio” input automatically when receiving a command from the TV.
<b>Off:</b>	Do not select the “TV Audio” input automatically when receiving a command from the TV.




- “TV Audio Switching” can be set when “HDMI Control” is set to “On”.  
( p. 201)

## ■ Power Off Control

Links the power standby of this unit to external devices.

<b>All</b> (Default):	If power to a connected TV is turned off independently of the input source, power to this unit is automatically set to standby.
<b>Video:</b>	With an input source being selected that is assigned either “HDMI”, “COMP” or “VIDEO”, when you turn the power of the TV off, power to this unit is automatically set to standby. (  p. 213)
<b>Off:</b>	This unit does not link with power to a TV.



- “Power Off Control” can be set when “HDMI Control” is set to “On”.  
( p. 201)



## ■ Power Saving

If “TV Speaker” is set as the audio output setting of your TV, this unit is automatically set to standby mode to reduce power consumption.

This function is activated in the following cases.

- When “TV Audio” is selected as the input source of this unit
- When playing content from a device connected by HDMI

<b>On:</b>	Use Power Saving function.
------------	----------------------------

<b>Off</b> (Default):	Do not use Power Saving function.
--------------------------	-----------------------------------



- “Power Saving” can be set when “HDMI Control” is set to “On”. (👉 p. 201)

## ■ Smart Menu

This function can be used to configure the settings of this unit, select an input source and set Internet Radio stations using the TV remote control.

<b>On:</b>	Use Smart Menu function.
------------	--------------------------

<b>Off:</b>	Do not use Smart Menu function.
-------------	---------------------------------



- “Smart Menu” can be set when “HDMI Control” is set to “On”. (👉 p. 201)

### NOTE

- If the “Smart Menu” settings have been changed, always reset the power to connected devices after the change.
- The Smart Menu function may not work properly depending on the specifications of your TV. In this case, set “Smart Menu” to “Off”.



## Output Settings

Makes settings for video output.



- This can be set when "HDMI", "COMP" or "VIDEO" is assigned for each input source. (🔗 p. 213)
- "Resolution", "Sharpness", "Progressive Mode" and "Aspect Ratio" can be set when "i/p Scaler" is set to anything other than "Off". ("Resolution" (🔗 p. 206), "Sharpness" (🔗 p. 206), "Progressive Mode" (🔗 p. 207), "Aspect Ratio" (🔗 p. 207))
- "Output Settings" cannot be set when 4K or 8K signals are input.
- "Video Mode", "i/p Scaler", "Resolution", "Sharpness", "Progressive Mode" and "Aspect Ratio" cannot be set when sound mode is set to "IMAX DTS" or "IMAX DTS:X". ("Video Mode" (🔗 p. 205), "i/p Scaler" (🔗 p. 205), "Resolution" (🔗 p. 206), "Sharpness" (🔗 p. 206), "Progressive Mode" (🔗 p. 207), "Aspect Ratio" (🔗 p. 207))
- "Video Conversion", "Video Mode", "i/p Scaler", "Resolution", "Sharpness", "Progressive Mode" and "Aspect Ratio" settings are stored for each input source. ("Video Conversion" (🔗 p. 205), "Video Mode" (🔗 p. 205), "i/p Scaler" (🔗 p. 205), "Resolution" (🔗 p. 206), "Sharpness" (🔗 p. 206), "Progressive Mode" (🔗 p. 207), "Aspect Ratio" (🔗 p. 207))

## ■ HDMI Video Output

Select the HDMI monitor connector to be used.

### Auto(Dual) (Default):

The presence of a TV connected to the HDMI MONITOR 1 or HDMI MONITOR 2 connector is detected automatically, and that TV connection is used.

### Monitor 1:

A TV connected to the HDMI MONITOR 1 connector is always used.

### Monitor 2:

A TV connected to the HDMI MONITOR 2 connector is always used.



- If both the HDMI MONITOR 1 and HDMI MONITOR 2 connectors are connected and "Resolution" is set to "Auto", the signals are output with a resolution that is compatible with both TVs. (🔗 p. 206)  
When the "Resolution" setting in the menu is not set to "Auto", set the resolution in "Video" - "HDMI Monitor 1" and "HDMI Monitor 2" to one that is compatible with both TVs. (🔗 p. 270)
- You can check which resolutions are compatible with your TV in "HDMI Monitor 1" and "HDMI Monitor 2". (🔗 p. 270)
- When connecting multiple Dolby Vision TVs, the signal will only be optimal for one TV. A TV connected to the HDMI MONITOR 1 connector has priority.



## ■ Video Mode

Configure the video processing method to match the type of video content.

<b>Auto</b> (Default):	Process video automatically based on the HDMI content information.
<b>Game:</b>	Always process video for game content. Minimize the video delay when the video is delayed compared to the button operations on the controller of the game console.
<b>Movie:</b>	Perform image processing that is suitable for contents other than games.



- If "Video Mode" is set to "Auto", the mode is switched according to the input contents.

## ■ Video Conversion

The input video signal is converted automatically in conjunction with the connected TV. (🔧 p. 321)

<b>On</b> (Default):	The input video signal is converted.
<b>Off:</b>	The input video signal is not converted.

## ■ i/p Scaler

Set the video input signal to be subjected to i/p Scaler processing. i/p Scaler will convert the resolution of the input video signal to the value set in "Resolution". (🔧 p. 206)

<b>Analog</b> (Default):	Use i/p (interlace-to-progressive) scaler function for analog video signals.
<b>Analog &amp; HDMI:</b>	Use i/p Scaler function for analog and HDMI video signal.
<b>HDMI:</b>	Use i/p Scaler function for HDMI video signals.
<b>Off:</b>	Do not use i/p Scaler function.



## ■ Resolution

Set the output resolution. You can set “Resolution” separately for HDMI output of the analog video input and HDMI input.

<b>Auto</b> (Default):	The resolution supported by the TV connected to the HDMI MONITOR OUT connector is detected automatically and the appropriate output resolution is set.
<b>480p/576p / 1080i / 720p / 1080p / 4K / 8K :</b>	Set the output resolution.



- When “i/p Scaler” is set to “Analog & HDMI”, the resolution of both the analog video input signal and HDMI input signal can be set. (🔗 p. 205)
- For the detail of upscaling, please refer to “Video conversion function” (🔗 p. 322).

## ■ Sharpness

Enables the sharpness feature which enhances the edges of images when up-scaling video to 4K or 8K.

<b>On:</b>	Enables the video enhancer sharpness feature to provide image edge contouring which is optimized for converting lower resolution standard definition video to 4K or 8K.
<b>Off</b> (Default):	Disables the video enhancer sharpness feature.



- This item can be set when “i/p Scaler” is set to anything other than “Off”. (🔗 p. 205)
- We recommend using this sharpness feature only when your TV sharpness is set to 0.



## ■ Progressive Mode

Set an appropriate progressive conversion mode for the source video signal.

<b>Auto</b> (Default):	The video signal is automatically detected and the appropriate mode is set.
<b>Video:</b>	Select mode suitable for video playback.
<b>Video and Film:</b>	Select mode suitable for video and 30-frame film material playback.



- This item can be set when "i/p Scaler" is set to anything other than "Off".  
( p. 205)

## ■ Aspect Ratio

Set the aspect ratio for the video signals output to the HDMI.

<b>16:9</b> (Default):	Output at 16:9 aspect ratio.
<b>4:3 :</b>	Output at 4:3 aspect ratio with black bars on the sides of a 16:9 TV screen. (except for 480p/576p output)



- This item can be set when "i/p Scaler" is set to anything other than "Off".  
( p. 205)



## Analog Video Out

Selects the zone that uses component video output and video output.

### ■ Component

Selects the zone that uses component video output.

<b>MAIN ZONE</b> (Default):	Used in the MAIN ZONE.
--------------------------------	------------------------

<b>ZONE2:</b>	Used in the ZONE2.
---------------	--------------------

<b>ZONE3:</b>	Used in the ZONE3.
---------------	--------------------

### ■ Video

Selects the zone that uses video output.

<b>MAIN ZONE</b> (Default):	Used in the MAIN ZONE.
--------------------------------	------------------------

<b>ZONE3:</b>	Used in the ZONE3.
---------------	--------------------

## On Screen Display

Select the on-screen display user interface preferences.

### ■ Volume

Sets where to display the volume level.

<b>Bottom</b> (Default):	Display at the bottom.
-----------------------------	------------------------

<b>Top:</b>	Display at the top.
-------------	---------------------

<b>Off:</b>	Turn display off.
-------------	-------------------



- When the master volume display is hard to see when superimposed text (closed captioning) or movie subtitles are present, set to "Top".

### ■ Info

Displays status of operation temporarily when the input source is switched.

<b>On</b> (Default):	Turn display on.
-------------------------	------------------

<b>Off:</b>	Turn display off.
-------------	-------------------





## ■ Now Playing

Sets the display time for the playback display when the input source is "HEOS Music".

<b>Always On</b> (Default):	Show display continuously.
<b>Auto Off:</b>	Show display for 30 seconds after operation.

## 4K/8K Signal Format

Set the format of 4K and 8K signal to be played back by this unit when the TV or playback device connected to this unit is HDMI 4K or 8K signal compatible.

### ■ 4K/8K Signal Format

Set the format of 4K and 8K signal played back by this unit.

<b>Standard:</b>	Select if your TV and playback devices support 4K 60p 4:2:0 8 bit video signals.
<b>Enhanced</b> (Default):	Select if your TV, playback devices, and cables support high quality 4K 60p 4:4:4 8 bit, 4:2:2 or 4:2:0 10 bit video signals.
<b>8K Enhanced:</b>	Select if your TV, playback devices, and cables support high quality 8K 60p or 4K 120p video signals.



[Relation between the “4K/8K Signal Format” setting and supported resolutions]

Support Resolution	Color Space	Pixel Depth	4K/8K Signal Format		
			Standard	Enhanced	8K Enhanced
4K 24p, 4K 30p, 4K 25p	RGB / YCbCr 4:4:4	8 bit	✓	✓	✓
		10,12 bit	–	✓	✓
	YCbCr 4:2:2	12 bit	✓	✓	✓
4K 60p, 4K 50p	YCbCr 4:2:0	8 bit	✓	✓	✓
		10,12 bit	–	✓	✓
	RGB / YCbCr 4:4:4	8 bit	–	✓	✓
		10,12 bit	–	–	✓
YCbCr 4:2:2	12 bit	–	✓	✓	
4K 120p, 4K 100p	YCbCr 4:2:0	8,10,12 bit	–	–	✓
	RGB / YCbCr 4:4:4	8,10 bit	–	–	✓
		12 bit	–	–	✓
8K 24p, 8K 30p, 8K 25p	YCbCr 4:2:0	8,10,12 bit	–	–	✓
	RGB / YCbCr 4:4:4	8,10 bit	–	–	✓
		12 bit	–	–	✓
8K 60p, 8K 50p	YCbCr 4:2:0	8, 10 bit	–	–	✓



- When setting this to “Enhanced”, we recommend using a “Premium High Speed HDMI Cable” or “Premium High Speed HDMI Cable with Ethernet” that has an “HDMI Premium Certified Cable” label attached to the product package.
- When setting this to “8K Enhanced”, we recommend using an “Ultra High Speed 48 Gbps HDMI cable”.
- When this setting is “Enhanced” or “8K Enhanced”, configure the television or playback device settings to match this setting.
- When this setting is “Enhanced” or “8K Enhanced”, video may not be output correctly depending on the connected playback device or HDMI cable. In this case, change this setting to “Standard”.
- “Custom” is displayed for the setting item if our service engineers or custom installers has configured the HDMI signal format for this unit.
- “4K/8K Signal Format” can also be set by the following procedure. However, the menu screen is not displayed. Watch the display while configuring the setting.
  1. Press and hold the main unit’s STATUS and ZONE3 SOURCE at the same time for at least 3 seconds.  
“\*Video Format <PAL>” appears on the display.
  2. Use  $\Delta$  or  $\nabla$  on the main unit.  
“4K/8K Format <Enhanced>” appears on the display.
  3. Use < or > on the main unit to select the 4K/8K Signal Format.
  4. Press the main unit’s ENTER to complete the setting.



## TV Format

Set the video signal format to be output for the TV you are using.

### ■ Format

<b>PAL</b> (Default):	Select PAL output.
<b>NTSC:</b>	Select NTSC output.



- “Format” can also be set by the following procedure. However, the menu screen is not displayed. Following the display content to make the setting.
  1. Press and hold the main unit’s STATUS and ZONE3 SOURCE at the same time for at least 3 seconds.  
“\*Video Format <PAL>” appears on the display.
  2. Use the main unit’s ◀ or ▶ and set the video signal format.
  3. Press the main unit’s ENTER to complete the setting.

#### NOTE

- When a format other than the video format of the connected TV is set, the picture will not be displayed properly.



# Inputs

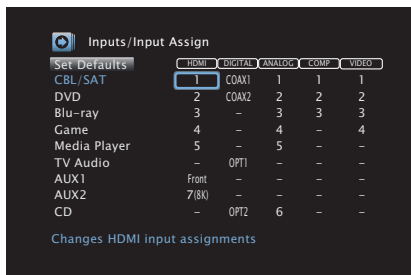
Perform settings related to input source playback.

You do not have to change the settings to use the unit. Make settings when needed.

## Input Assign

By making connections as indicated by the input sources printed on the audio/video input connectors of this unit, you can just press one of the input source select buttons to easily play back audio or video from a connected device.

Please change the assignment of the HDMI input connector, digital audio input connector, analog audio input connector, component video input connector and video input connector when connecting an input source that differs from that printed to the audio/video input connectors of this unit.



- By default, each item is set as follows.

Input source	Input connector				
	HDMI	DIGITAL	ANALOG	COMP	VIDEO
CBL/SAT	1	COAX1	1	1	1
DVD	2	COAX2	2	2	2
Blu-ray	3	-	3	3	3
Game	4	-	4	-	4
Media Player	5	-	5	-	-
TV Audio	-	OPT1	-	-	-
AUX1	Front	-	-	-	-
AUX2	7(8K)	-	-	-	-
CD	-	OPT2	6	-	-

### TV set top box/satellite users please note

When using the digital audio output on a TV/satellite box:

To play the video signal assigned to "HDMI" combined with the audio signal assigned at "Input Assign" - "DIGITAL", you will also need to select "Digital" in the "Input Mode". (🔗 p. 216)



## ■ HDMI

Set this to change the HDMI input connectors assigned to the input sources.

**1 / 2 / 3 / 4 / 5 / 6 / 7(8K) / Front:** Assign an HDMI input connector to the selected input source.

- : Do not assign an HDMI input connector to the selected input source.



- When "HDMI Control" or "ARC" is set to "On" in the menu, "HDMI" cannot be assigned to "TV Audio". ("HDMI Control" (p. 201), "ARC" (p. 201))
- The eARC function does not operate when "HDMI" is set as the "TV Audio" input source.

## ■ DIGITAL

Set this to change the digital audio input connectors assigned to the input sources.

**COAX1 (Coaxial) / COAX2 / OPT1 (Optical) / OPT2:** Assign a digital audio input connector to the selected input source.

- : Do not assign a digital audio input connector to the selected input source.

## ■ ANALOG

Set this to change the analog audio input connectors assigned to the input sources.

**1 / 2 / 3 / 4 / 5 / 6:** Assign an analog audio input connector to the selected input source.

- : Do not assign an analog audio input connector to the selected input source.

## ■ COMP (Component video)

Set this to change the component video input connectors assigned to the input sources.

**1 / 2 / 3:** Assign the component video input connector to the selected input source.

- : Do not assign a component video input connector to the selected input source.



## ■ VIDEO

Set this to change the composite video input connectors assigned to the input sources.

<b>1 / 2 / 3 / 4:</b>	Assign the video input connector to the selected input source.
<b>- :</b>	Do not assign a video input connector to the selected input source.

## ■ Set Defaults

The “Input Assign” settings are returned to the default settings.

## Source Rename

Change the display name for input source.

This is convenient when the name of your device and the input source name of this unit are different. You can change the name to suit your needs. When the renaming is completed, the name is displayed on this unit’s display and on the menu screen.

**CBL/SAT / DVD / Blu-ray /  
Game / Media Player /  
AUX1 / AUX2/  
TV Audio / CD /  
Phono / Tuner:**

Change the display name for input source.

### Set Defaults:

The “Source Rename” settings are returned to the default settings.



- Up to 12 characters can be input.



## Hide Sources

Remove from the display input sources that are not used.

<b>Show</b> (Default):	Use this source.
<b>Hide:</b>	Do not use this source.

## Source Level

This function corrects the playback level of the selected input source's audio input.

Make this setting if there are differences in the input volume levels between the different sources.

### ■ Source Level

#### When the input source is set to “HEOS Music”

-12 dB – +12 dB (Default : 0 dB)

### ■ Analog Inputs / Digital Inputs

#### When the input source is set other than to “HEOS Music”

-12dB – +12dB (Default : 0dB)



- The analog input level can be adjusted independently for input sources for which “ANALOG” is assigned at “Input Assign”. (👉 p. 212)
- The digital input level can be adjusted independently for input sources for which “DIGITAL” is assigned at “Input Assign”. (👉 p. 212)
- “Source Level” settings are stored for each input source.



## Input Select

Set the audio input mode of each input source.

The input modes available for selection may vary depending on the input source.



- "Input Select" settings are stored for each input source.




### Input Mode

Set the audio input modes for the different input sources.

It is normally recommended to set the audio input mode to "Auto".

<b>Auto</b> (Default):	Automatically detect input signal and perform playback.
<b>HDMI:</b>	Play only signals from HDMI input.
<b>Digital:</b>	Play only signals from digital audio input.
<b>Analog:</b>	Play only signals from analog audio input.
<b>7.1CH IN:</b>	Only signals input from the 7.1CH IN connector will be played back.



- When digital signals are properly input, the  indicator lights on the display. If the  indicator does not light, check "Input Assign" and the connections. ( p. 212)
- If "HDMI Control" is set to "On" and a TV compatible with the ARC is connected via the HDMI MONITOR 1 connectors, the input mode whose input source is "TV Audio" is fixed to ARC.
- When an eARC function-compatible television is connected to the HDMI MONITOR 1 connector, the input mode is fixed to eARC while the input source is "TV Audio".
- The sound mode cannot be set if the input mode is set to "7.1CH IN".





# Speakers

The acoustic characteristics of the connected speakers and listening room are measured and the optimum settings are made automatically. This is called “Audyssey® Setup”.

You do not have to perform Audyssey® Setup when you have already performed “Speaker Calibration” in “Setup Assistant”.

To set up the speakers manually, use “Manual Setup” on the menu. (🔗 p. 228)

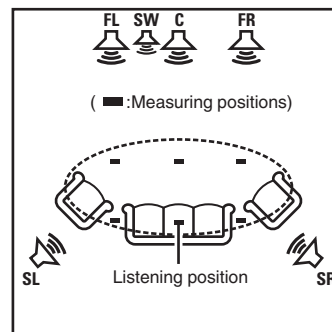
## Audyssey® Setup

To perform measurement, place the Sound calibration microphone in multiple locations all around the listening area. For best results, we recommend you measure in six or more positions, as shown in the illustration (up to eight positions).

When measuring the second and subsequent positions, install the Sound calibration microphone within 60 cm of the first measurement position (main listening position).



- If you perform Audyssey® Setup, Audyssey MultEQ® XT32, Audyssey Dynamic EQ®, Audyssey Dynamic Volume® and Audyssey LFC™ functions are enabled. (🔗 p. 192)



- FL** Front speaker (L)
- FR** Front speaker (R)
- C** Center speaker
- SW** Subwoofer
- SL** Surround speaker (L)
- SR** Surround speaker (R)



## ■ About the main listening position

The main listening position is the position where listeners would normally sit or where one would normally sit alone within the listening environment. Before starting Audyssey® Setup, place the Sound calibration microphone in the main listening position.

Audyssey MultEQ® XT32 uses the measurements from this position to calculate speaker distance, level, polarity, and the optimum crossover value for the subwoofer.

## ■ About Audyssey Sub EQ HT™

Audyssey Sub EQ HT™ makes the integration of dual subwoofers seamless by first compensating for any level and delay differences between the two subwoofers and then applying Audyssey MultEQ® XT32 to both subwoofers together.

To run Audyssey Sub EQ HT™ you must select “Measure (2 spkrs)” in “Channel Select”. (🔗 p. 220).

### NOTE

- Make the room as quiet as possible. Background noise can disrupt the room measurements. Close windows and turn off the power on electronic devices (radios, air conditioners, fluorescent lights, etc.). The measurements could be affected by the sounds emitted by such devices.
- During the measurement process, place cell phones outside the listening room. Cell phone signals could disrupt the measurements.
- Do not stand between the speakers and Sound calibration microphone or allow obstacles in the path while the measurements are being made. Also, install the Sound calibration microphone at least 50 cm away from the wall. Failure to do so will result in inaccurate readings.
- During the measurement process, audible test tones will come from the speakers and subwoofer(s), but this is part of normal operation. If there is background noise in the room, these test signals will increase in volume.
- Operating VOLUME ▲▼ on the remote control unit or MASTER VOLUME on the main unit during the measurements will cancel the measurements.
- Measurement cannot be performed when headphones are connected. Unplug the headphones before performing Audyssey® Setup.



## Procedure for speaker settings (Audyssey® Setup)

Preparation



Measurement



Calculation & Store



Check



Finish

- 1 Attach the Sound calibration microphone to the supplied microphone stand or own tripod and install it at the main listening position.**

When installing the Sound calibration microphone, point the tip of the microphone toward the ceiling and adjust the height to match the height of the ears of a listener in a seated position.

- 2 If using a subwoofer capable of the following adjustments, set up the subwoofer as shown below.**

**When using a subwoofer with a direct mode**

Set the direct mode to “On” and disable the volume adjustment and crossover frequency setting.

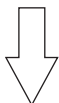
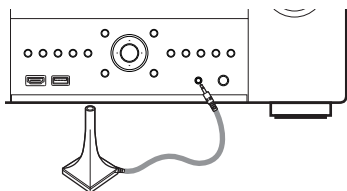
**When using a subwoofer without a direct mode**

Make the following settings:

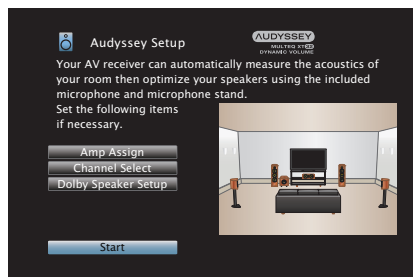
- Volume : 12 o'clock position
- Crossover frequency : Maximum/Highest Frequency
- Low pass filter : Off
- Standby mode : Off



### 3 Connect the Sound calibration microphone to the SETUP MIC jack of this unit.



When the Sound calibration microphone is connected, the following screen is displayed.



### 4 Select “Start”, then press ENTER.

Audyssey® Setup can also make the following settings.

- **Amp Assign**

The signals output from the SURROUND BACK, HEIGHT1, HEIGHT2, HEIGHT3 and HEIGHT4/FRONT WIDE speaker terminals can be switched in accordance with your speaker environment. (“Amp Assign” (p. 228))

- **Channel Select**

If channels that are not to be used are set in advance, measurement for the set channels is skipped, and measuring time can be reduced. You can also change the number of surround back speakers and subwoofer.

- **Dolby Speaker Setup**

Set the distance between the Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker and the ceiling.

This can be set when using the Front Dolby Atmos Enabled, Surround Dolby Atmos Enabled or Back Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker.

### 5 Follow the instructions on the screen display and press “Next” to proceed further.



## 6 When the following screen is displayed, select “Begin Test” and then press ENTER.

Start the measurement of the first position.



- Measurement requires several minutes.

### NOTE

- If **“Caution!”** is displayed on TV screen:
  - Go to “Error messages” (🔧 p. 225). Check any related items, and perform the necessary procedures.
  - If the volume level for the subwoofer is not appropriate, an error message is displayed. See “Subwoofer level error message and how to adjust” (🔧 p. 226).

## 7 When the detected speaker is displayed, select “Next” and then press ENTER.



## 8 Move the Sound calibration microphone to position 2, select “Continue”, then press ENTER.

The measurement of the second position starts.

Measurements can be made in up to eight positions.



### □ Stopping Audyssey® Setup

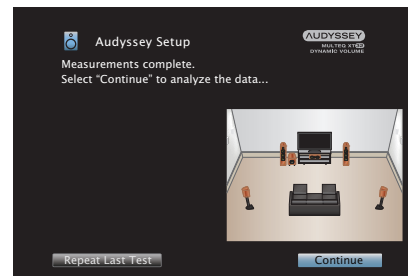
- ① Press BACK to display the popup screen.
- ② Press < to select “Yes”, then press ENTER.

## 9 Repeat step 8, measuring positions 3 to 8.



- To skip measuring the fourth and subsequent listening position, press < to select “Complete” and press ENTER to proceed to step 11.

## 10 Select “Continue”, then press ENTER.



Start the analysis and storage of the measurement results.

- Analysis takes several minutes to complete.  
The more speakers and measurement positions that there are, the more time it takes to perform the analysis.

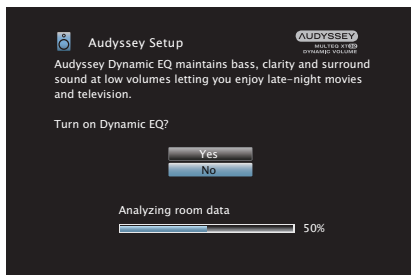
### NOTE

- When the measurement results are being saved, make sure the power is not turned off.



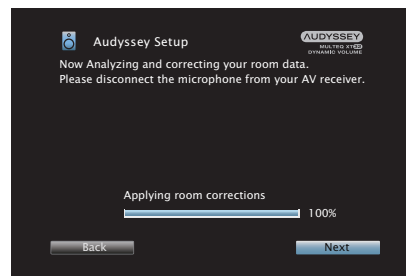
## 11 Perform the settings for Audyssey Dynamic EQ® and Audyssey Dynamic Volume®.

The following screen is displayed during the analysis. Configure the settings as preferred.



- Dynamic EQ corrects the frequency response in consideration of the audio characteristics of the room and human hearing ability so that sound can be heard even at low volume. This is recommended when using the unit with the volume turned down, e.g. when enjoying a movie or TV program in the middle of the night.
- Dynamic Volume adjusts the output volume to the optimal level while constantly monitoring the level of the audio input to the unit. Optimal volume control is performed automatically without any loss in the dynamism and clarity of the sound when, for example, the volume suddenly increases for commercials shown during television programs.

## 12 When the analysis and storage ends, unplug the Sound calibration microphone from the SETUP MIC jack on the main unit and then press “Next”.



## 13 Select “Details” and press ENTER to verify the measurement results.

- Subwoofers may measure a greater reported distance than the actual distance due to added electrical delay common in subwoofers.

### NOTE

- Do not enable new speakers in speaker configuration menu after Audyssey® Setup. If it is changed, run Audyssey® Setup again in order to configure the optimum equalizer settings.





## Error messages

An error message is displayed if Audyssey® Setup could not be completed due to speaker placement, the measurement environment, etc. If an error message is displayed, check the relevant items and perform the necessary measures. Be sure to turn off the power before checking speaker connections.

Examples	Error details	Measures
No speakers found.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Sound calibration microphone is not detected.</li> <li>• Not all speakers could be detected.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Connect the included Sound calibration microphone to the SETUP MIC jack of this unit.</li> <li>• Check the speaker connections.</li> </ul>
Ambient noise is too high or level is too low	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• There is too much noise in the room.</li> <li>• Speaker or subwoofer sound is too low.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Either turn off any device generating noise or move it away.</li> <li>• Perform again when the surroundings are quieter.</li> <li>• Check the speaker installation and the direction in which the speakers are facing.</li> <li>• Adjust the subwoofer's volume.</li> </ul>
Front R : None	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The displayed speaker could not be detected.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the connections of the displayed speaker.</li> </ul>
Front R : Phase	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The displayed speaker is connected with the polarity reversed.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the polarity of the displayed speaker.</li> <li>• For some speakers, this error message may be displayed even if the speaker is properly connected. If you are sure the connection is correct, press <math>\triangleright</math> to select "Ignore", then press ENTER.</li> </ul>



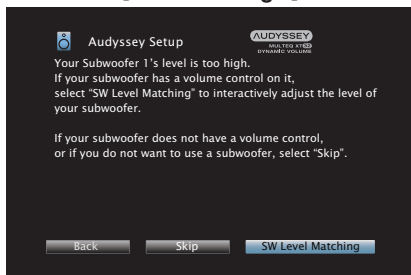
## ■ Subwoofer level error message and how to adjust

The optimal level of each subwoofer channel for Audyssey® Setup measurement is 75 dB.

During subwoofer level measurement, an error message is displayed when one level of subwoofers is outside the 72 – 78 dB range.

When using a subwoofer with built-in amplifier (active type), adjust the subwoofer volume so that the subwoofer level is within the 72 to 78 dB range.

### [ Error message ]



- 1 Select "SW Level Matching" and then press ENTER.
- 2 Adjust the volume control on your subwoofer so that the measured level is within the 72 to 78 dB range.
- 3 When the measured level is within the 72 to 78 dB range, select "Next" and then press ENTER.
  - If you use two subwoofers, the second subwoofer's adjustment will be started. Repeat the operation from step 2, 3.



## Retrieving Audyssey® Setup settings

If you set “Restore...” to “Restore”, you can return to Audyssey® Setup measurement result (value calculated at the start by MultEQ® XT32) even when you have changed each setting manually.



## Manual Setup

Perform when setting the speakers manually or when changing settings made in Audyssey® Setup.

- If you enable new speakers in the speaker configuration menu after performing Audyssey® Setup, you will no longer be able to select Audyssey MultEQ® XT32, Audyssey Dynamic EQ® or Audyssey Dynamic Volume®. (👉 p. 192)
- Changing the following settings:  
Speaker size (Large or Small) / Distances / Levels / Crossovers settings will not disable Audyssey® or require running Audyssey® Setup again.
- “Manual Setup” can be used without changing the settings. Please set if necessary.

## Amp Assign

Select the power amplifier usage method to match your speaker system.

### ■ Assign Mode

Select how to use the power amp.

You need to configure the detailed settings for the speaker configuration in accordance with the selected mode. Select Assign Mode configure the corresponding detailed settings.

#### 13.1ch (Default):

- Settings to assign all power amplifier within this unit to MAIN ZONE to play back up to 13.1-channels.
- You can connect speakers for up to 15.1-channels for MAIN ZONE.

The speaker output automatically switches for playing back up to 13.1-channels in accordance with the input signal and sound mode when 15.1-channel speakers are installed.

#### 11.1ch + ZONE2:

- Setting to assign the power amplifiers in this unit for ZONE2 to 2-channels.
- You can connect speakers for up to 11.1-channels for MAIN ZONE.



**11.1ch + ZONE3:**

- Setting to assign the power amplifiers in this unit for ZONE3 to 2-channels
- You can connect speakers for up to 11.1-channels for MAIN ZONE.

**9.1ch + ZONE2/3:**

- Setting to assign the power amplifiers within this unit for ZONE2 and ZONE3 each to two different channel.
- You can connect speakers for up to 9.1-channels for MAIN ZONE.

**11.1ch + ZONE2/3-MONO:**

- Setting to assign the power amplifiers in this unit for ZONE2 and ZONE3 each to a different channel.
- You can connect speakers for up to 11.1-channels for MAIN ZONE.

**11.1ch (Bi-Amp):**

- Setting to assign the power amplifiers in this unit for front speaker bi-amp connection to 2-channels.
- You can connect speakers for up to 11.1-channels for MAIN ZONE.

**9.1ch (Bi-Amp) + ZONE2:**

- Setting to assign the power amplifiers in this unit for front speaker bi-amp connection to 2-channels.
- Setting to assign the power amplifiers in this unit for ZONE2 to 2-channels.

**5.1ch Full Bi-Amp:**

- Setting to assign the power amplifiers in this unit for front, center and surround speakers to 10 channels.
- You can connect speakers for up to 5.1 channels for MAIN ZONE.

**11.1ch + Front B:**

- Setting to assign the power amplifiers within this unit for connecting the second set of front speakers.
- You can switch between the desired combination of front speakers A and front speakers B.

Switch the front speaker using the “Front Speaker” setting. (🔍 p. 248)



**Pre Amplifier:**

- All of the speakers are connected using an external power amplifier and this unit is used as a pre amplifier.
- You can connect speakers for up to 15.1-channels for MAIN ZONE.

The pre-out output automatically switches for playing back up to 13.1-channels in accordance with the input signals and sound mode when 15.1-channel speakers are installed.

**Custom:**

- The internal amplifier of this unit is assigned as desired.
- You can connect speakers for up to 13.1-channels for MAIN ZONE.

Set the channel to be assigned to the speaker terminal in "Settings". (🔧 p. 237)

## ■ Speakers for ZONE2 / Speakers for ZONE3 / Speakers for ZONE2/3 / Speakers for Bi-Amp / Speakers for 2ch / Speakers for Front B

When "Assign Mode" is set to "11.1ch + ZONE2", "11.1ch + ZONE3", "11.1ch + ZONE2/3-MONO", "9.1ch + ZONE2/3", "11.1ch (Bi-Amp)" or "11.1ch + Front B" in the menu, select the speaker terminal from which to output the channels to which the internal amplifier is assigned. (🔧 p. 228)

**HEIGHT 2:**

The assigned channels are output from the HEIGHT2 speaker terminals. Up to one set of height, ceiling, and Dolby Atmos Enabled channels can be used.

**HEIGHT 3:**

The assigned channels are output from the HEIGHT3 speaker terminals.

**SURROUND BACK:**

The assigned channels are output from the SURROUND BACK speaker terminals. The surround back channel cannot be used.



## ■ Floor

### □ Layout

Select the floor speakers location.

<b>5ch &amp; SB &amp; FW:</b>	This layout combines a surround back or front wide speaker with the basic 5-channel layout.
<b>5ch &amp; SB (Default):</b>	This layout combines a surround back speaker with the basic 5-channel layout.
<b>5ch &amp; FW:</b>	This layout combines a front wide speaker with the basic 5-channel layout.
<b>5ch:</b>	This is a basic 5-channel layout that uses front speakers, center speakers and surround speakers.

## ■ Height

### □ Height Sp

Select the number of the height speakers and ceiling speakers used in MAIN ZONE.

<b>None:</b>	Uses no height and ceiling speakers.
<b>2ch:</b>	Uses a set of (two) height speakers or ceiling speakers.
<b>4ch:</b>	Uses two sets of (four) height speakers or ceiling speakers.
<b>5ch:</b>	Uses five height or ceiling speakers.
<b>6ch:</b>	Uses six height or ceiling speakers.
<b>7ch:</b>	Uses seven height or ceiling speakers.
<b>8ch (Default):</b>	Uses eight height or ceiling speakers.



- Select the “5ch” setting or higher when using Top Surround or Center Height speakers.



## ❑ Dolby Sp

Select the number of the Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers used in MAIN ZONE.

<b>None</b> (Default):	Uses no Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers.
<b>2ch:</b>	Uses a set of (two) Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers.
<b>4ch:</b>	Uses two sets of (four) Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers.
<b>6ch:</b>	Uses three sets of (six) Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers.





## Layout

Set the speaker layout when installing 1 set (2-channels) of Height, Ceiling or Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers.

The layouts that can be selected differ depending on the combinations of "Assign Mode" and "Floor" - "Layout" in the menu. ("Assign Mode" (🔍 p. 228), "Floor" - "Layout" (🔍 p. 231))

Settings			AUDIO OUT connectors			
Height Sp	Dolby Sp	Layout	HEIGHT 1	HEIGHT 2	HEIGHT 3	HEIGHT 4/FRONT WIDE
None	None	-	-	-	-	-
2ch	None	Front Height	Front Height	-	-	-
		Top Front	Top Front	-	-	-
		Top Middle	Top Middle	-	-	-
		Top Rear	Top Rear	-	-	-
		Rear Height	Rear Height	-	-	-
None	2ch	Front Dolby	Front Dolby	-	-	-
		Surround Dolby	Surround Dolby	-	-	-
		Back Dolby *	Back Dolby	-	-	-

\* This can be selected when using Surround Back speakers. Set "Floor" - "Layout" in the menu to "5ch & SB" or "5ch & SB & FW". (🔍 p. 231)



## □ Front Layout / Middle Layout / Rear Layout

Set the speaker layout when installing 2 sets (4-channels) or more of Height, Ceiling or Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers.

The layouts that can be selected differ depending on the combinations of “Assign Mode” and “Floor” - “Layout” in the menu. (“Assign Mode” (👉 p. 228), “Floor” - “Layout” (👉 p. 231))

Settings			AUDIO OUT connectors						
Height Sp	Dolby Sp	NOTE	Front Layout	Middle Layout	Rear Layout	HEIGHT 1	HEIGHT 2	HEIGHT 3	HEIGHT 4/ FRONT WIDE
2ch	2ch		Front Dolby	-	Top Rear	Front Dolby	Top Rear	-	-
			Front Dolby	-	Rear Height	Front Dolby	Rear Height	-	-
			Front Height	-	Surround Dolby	Front Height	Surround Dolby	-	-
			Front Height	-	Back Dolby*1	Front Height	Back Dolby	-	-
			Top Front	-	Surround Dolby	Top Front	Surround Dolby	-	-
			Top Front	-	Back Dolby*1	Top Front	Back Dolby	-	-
4ch	None		Front Height	-	Top Middle	Front Height	Top Middle	-	-
			Front Height	-	Top Rear	Front Height	Top Rear	-	-
			Front Height	-	Rear Height*2	Front Height	Rear Height	-	-
			Front Height	-	Surr. Height	Front Height	Surr. Height	-	-
			Top Front	-	Top Rear	Top Front	Top Rear	-	-
			Top Front	-	Rear Height	Top Front	Rear Height	-	-
			Top Middle	-	Rear Height	Top Middle	Rear Height	-	-



Settings						AUDIO OUT connectors			
Height Sp	Dolby Sp	NOTE	Front Layout	Middle Layout	Rear Layout	HEIGHT 1	HEIGHT 2	HEIGHT 3	HEIGHT 4/ FRONT WIDE
None	4ch		Front Dolby	-	Surround Dolby	Front Dolby	Surround Dolby	-	-
			Front Dolby	-	Back Dolby*1	Front Dolby	Back Dolby	-	-
5ch	None	*3	Front Height	Top Surround	Rear Height*2	Front Height	Rear Height	L: Top Surround	-
			Front Height	Surr. Height & Top Surround	None	Front Height	Surr. Height	L: Top Surround	-
			Front Height & Center Height	None	Rear Height*2	Front Height	Rear Height	R: Center Height	-
			Front Height & Center Height	Surr. Height	None	Front Height	Surr. Height	R: Center Height	-
6ch	None	*3 *4	Front Height	Surr. Height	Rear Height	Front Height	Rear Height	Surr. Height	-
		*3	Front Height & Center Height	Top Surround	Rear Height*2	Front Height	Rear Height	L: Top Surround R: Center Height	-
			Front Height & Center Height	Surr. Height & Top Surround	None	Front Height	Surr. Height	L: Top Surround R: Center Height	-
		*5	Front Height	Top Middle	Rear Height	Front Height	Rear Height	Top Middle	-
			Top Front	Top Middle	Top Rear	Top Front	Top Rear	Top Middle	-



Settings						AUDIO OUT connectors			
Height Sp	Dolby Sp	NOTE	Front Layout	Middle Layout	Rear Layout	HEIGHT 1	HEIGHT 2	HEIGHT 3	HEIGHT 4/ FRONT WIDE
4ch	2ch	*3	Front Height	Surround Dolby	Rear Height	Front Height	Rear Height	Surround Dolby	-
			Top Front	Surround Dolby	Top Rear	Top Front	Top Rear	Surround Dolby	-
2ch	4ch	*3	Front Height	Surround Dolby	Back Dolby*1	Front Height	Back Dolby	Surround Dolby	-
			Front Dolby	Top Middle	Back Dolby*1	Front Dolby	Back Dolby	Top Middle	-
			Front Dolby	Surround Dolby	Rear Height	Front Dolby	Rear Height	Surround Dolby	-
None	6ch	*3	Front Dolby	Surround Dolby	Back Dolby*1	Front Dolby	Back Dolby	Surround Dolby	-
7ch	None	*3 *6	Front Height	Top Middle & Top Surround	Rear Height	Front Height	Rear Height	Top Middle	L: Top Surround
			Front Height & Center Height	Top Middle	Rear Height	Front Height	Rear Height	Top Middle	R: Center Height
5ch	2ch	*3 *6	Front Height	Surr. Dolby & Top Surround	Rear Height	Front Height	Rear Height	Surround Dolby	L: Top Surround
			Front Height & Center Height	Surround Dolby	Rear Height	Front Height	Rear Height	Surround Dolby	R: Center Height



Settings						AUDIO OUT connectors			
Height Sp	Dolby Sp	NOTE	Front Layout	Middle Layout	Rear Layout	HEIGHT 1	HEIGHT 2	HEIGHT 3	HEIGHT 4/ FRONT WIDE
8ch	None	*3 *6	Front Height & Center Height	Top Middle & Top Surround	Rear Height	Front Height	Rear Height	Top Middle	L: Top Surround R: Center Height
6ch	2ch	*3 *6	Front Height & Center Height	Surr. Dolby & Top Surround	Rear Height	Front Height	Rear Height	Surround Dolby	L: Top Surround R: Center Height

\*1 This can be selected when using Surround Back speakers.

\*2 For the best Auro-3D experience Surround Height speakers are recommended, however you may substitute Rear Height speakers from a Dolby Atmos speaker setup in place of Surround Height speakers.

\*3 This can be set when "Assign Mode" in the menu is set to "13.1ch" or "11.1ch". (🔧 p. 228)

\*4 Use 2 sets of Height speakers in the appropriate sound modes for Dolby Atmos, DTS:X or Auro-3D playback.  
Use the Front Height and Rear Height speakers for Dolby Atmos or DTS:X playback.  
Use the Front Height and Surround Height speakers for Auro-3D playback.

\*5 This can be set when "Assign Mode" in the menu is set to "13.1ch" or "11.1ch", and "Floor" - "Layout" is set to "5ch" or "5ch & SB". (🔧 p. 231)

\*6 This combination cannot be selected when Front Wide speakers are being used.

## □ Settings

Select the signal to be output from the selected speaker terminal.

- Only "Center" and "None" can be set for the CENTER speaker terminal.
- The HEIGHT4/FRONT WIDE speaker terminal is not used.

## ■ View Terminal Config.

This shows how to connect the speaker terminals and PRE OUT connectors for your "Amp Assign" setting on the menu screen.



## Speaker Config.

Select whether or not speakers are present, playback capacity for low bass frequencies and speaker size.



- When speakers for which you assigned Height1 in “Amp Assign” are set to “None”, “None” is automatically set for Height2, Height3 and Height4.
- When speakers for which you assigned Height2 in “Amp Assign” are set to “None”, “None” is automatically set for Height3 and Height4.

### ■ Front

Set the front speaker size.

<b>Large</b> (Default):	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
<b>Small:</b>	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.



- When “Subwoofer” is set to “No”, “Front” is automatically set to “Large”.
- When “Front” is set to “Small”, you cannot set speakers other than “Front” to “Large”.

### ■ Center

Set the presence and size of the center speaker.

<b>Large:</b>	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
<b>Small</b> (Default):	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
<b>None:</b>	Select when a center speaker is not connected.

### ■ Subwoofer

Set the presence of a subwoofer.

<b>2 spkrs:</b>	Use two subwoofers.
<b>1 spkr</b> (Default):	Use only one subwoofer.
<b>None:</b>	Select when a subwoofer is not connected.



- When “Subwoofer” is set to “None” and you set “Front” to “Small”, “Subwoofer” is automatically set to “1 spkr”.



## ■ Surround

Set the presence and size of the surround speakers.

<b>Large:</b>	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
<b>Small (Default):</b>	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
<b>None:</b>	Select when the surround speakers are not connected.



- When "Surround" is set to "None", "Surr. Back", "Front Wide", "Surround Dolby" and "Back Dolby" are automatically set to "None".

## ■ Surr. Back

Set the presence, size and number of surround back speakers.

<b>Large:</b>	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
<b>Small (Default):</b>	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
<b>None:</b>	Select when the surround back speakers are not connected.

<b>2 spkrs (Default):</b>	Use two surround back speakers.
<b>1 spkr:</b>	Use only one surround back speaker. Connect to the L terminal to SURROUND BACK when this setting is selected.



- When "Surr. Back" is set to "None" or "1 spkr", "Back Dolby" is automatically set to "None".



## ■ Front Wide

Set the presence and size of the front wide speakers.

<b>Large:</b>	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
<b>Small (Default):</b>	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
<b>None:</b>	Select when the front wide speakers are not connected.

## ■ Front Height

Set the presence and size of the front height speakers.

<b>Large:</b>	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
<b>Small (Default):</b>	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
<b>None:</b>	Select when the front height speakers are not connected.

## ■ Front Dolby

Set the presence and size of the front Dolby speakers.

<b>Large:</b>	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
<b>Small (Default):</b>	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
<b>None:</b>	Select when the front Dolby speakers are not connected.

## ■ Top Front

Set the presence and size of the top front speakers.

<b>Large:</b>	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
<b>Small (Default):</b>	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
<b>None:</b>	Select when the top front speakers are not connected.





## ■ Top Middle

Set the presence and size of the top middle speakers.

<b>Large:</b>	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
<b>Small (Default):</b>	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
<b>None:</b>	Select when the top middle speakers are not connected.

## ■ Surround Dolby

Set the presence and size of the surround Dolby speakers.

<b>Large:</b>	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
<b>Small (Default):</b>	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
<b>None:</b>	Select when the surround Dolby speakers are not connected.

## ■ Top Rear

Set the presence and size of the top rear speakers.

<b>Large:</b>	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
<b>Small (Default):</b>	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
<b>None:</b>	Select when the top rear speakers are not connected.

## ■ Surr. Height

Set the presence and size of the surround height speakers.

<b>Large:</b>	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
<b>Small (Default):</b>	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
<b>None:</b>	Select when the surround height speakers are not connected.



- When “Front Height” is set to “None”, “Surr. Height” is automatically set to “None”.



## ■ Rear Height

Set the presence and size of the rear height speakers.

<b>Large:</b>	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
<b>Small (Default):</b>	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
<b>None:</b>	Select when the rear height speakers are not connected.

## ■ Back Dolby

Set the presence and size of the back Dolby speakers.

<b>Large:</b>	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
<b>Small (Default):</b>	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
<b>None:</b>	Select when the back Dolby speakers are not connected.



- When speakers for which you assigned Height1 in "Amp Assign" are set to "None", "None" is automatically set for Height2, Height3 and Height4.



## ■ Center Height

Set the presence and size of the center height speaker.

<b>Large:</b>	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
<b>Small (Default):</b>	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
<b>None:</b>	Select when the center height speaker is not connected.



- When "Surr. Height" or "Rear Height" is set to "None", "Center Height" is automatically set to "None".
- When "Center" is set to "None", "Center Height" is automatically set to "None".

## ■ Top Surround

Set the presence and size of the top surround speaker.

<b>Large:</b>	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
<b>Small (Default):</b>	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
<b>None:</b>	Select when the top surround speaker is not connected.



- When "Surr. Height" or "Rear Height" is set to "None", "Top Surround" is automatically set to "None".



## Distances

Set distance from listening position to speakers.

Measure beforehand the distance from the listening position to each speaker.

### ■ Unit

Set the unit of distance.

**Meters** (Default)

**Feet**

### ■ Step

Set the minimum variable width of the distance.

**0.1 m / 0.01 m** (Default: 0.1 m)

**1 ft / 0.1 ft**

### ■ Set the distance

**0.00 m – 18.00 m / 0.0 ft – 60.0 ft**



- The speakers that can be selected differ depending on the “Amp Assign” and “Speaker Config.” settings. (“Amp Assign” (p. 228), “Speaker Config.” (p. 238))
- Default settings:  
Front L / Front R / Center / Subwoofer 1 / Subwoofer 2 / F. Wide L / F. Wide R / F. Height L / F. Height R / Front Dolby L / Front Dolby R / Center Height: 3.60 m (12.0 ft)  
Speakers other than the above: 3.00 m (10.0 ft)
- Set the difference in the distance between the speakers to less than 6.00 m (20.0 ft).



## ■ Dolby Speaker Setup

Set the distance between the Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker and the ceiling.

---

**0.90 m - 3.30 m / 3.0 ft - 11.0 ft**  
(Default : 1.80 m / 6.0 ft)

---



- This can be set when “Front Dolby”, “Surround Dolby” or “Back Dolby” is set to “Large” or “Small” in “Speaker Config.”.

## ■ Set Defaults

The “Distances” settings are returned to the default settings.

## Levels

Set the volume of the test tone to be the same at the listening position when it is output from each speaker.

## ■ Test Tone Start

A test tone is output from the selected speaker.

While listening to the test tone, adjust the volume output from the selected speaker.

---

**-12.0 dB – +12.0 dB** (Default : 0.0 dB)

---



- The set “Levels” are reflected in all sound modes.
- If you wish to adjust the channel level for each input source, carry out the settings in “Channel Level Adjust”. (p. 134)
- When headphones are connected to the PHONES connector on this unit, you cannot set “Levels”.

## ■ Set Defaults

The “Levels” settings are returned to the default settings.



## Crossovers

Set in accordance with the lower limit frequency of the base frequencies that can be played back through each speaker. See the speaker manual for information concerning speaker crossover frequency.

### ■ Speaker Selection

Selects how to set the crossover frequency.

<b>All</b> (Default):	Sets the same crossover frequency for all speakers.
<b>Individual:</b>	Selects the crossover points for each speaker individually.

### ■ Set the crossover frequency

40 Hz / 60 Hz / 80 Hz / 90 Hz / 100 Hz / 110 Hz / 120 Hz / 150 Hz / 180 Hz / 200 Hz / 250 Hz (Default: 80 Hz)



- “Crossovers” can be set when the “Subwoofer Mode” setting is “LFE+Main”, or when you have a speaker that is set to “Small”. (📖 p. 247)
- The default crossover frequency is “80 Hz”, which will work best with the widest variety of speakers. We recommend setting to a higher frequency that the crossover frequency when small speakers are used. For example, set to “250 Hz” when the frequency range of the speakers is 250 Hz – 20 kHz.
- Sound below the crossover frequency is cut off from the output of the speakers set in “Small”. This cut off bass frequency is output from the subwoofer or front speakers.
- The speakers that can be set when “Individual” is selected differ depending on to the “Subwoofer Mode” setting. (📖 p. 247)
  - When “LFE” is selected, speakers set to “Small” at “Speaker Config.” can be set. If the speakers are set to “Large”, “Full Band” is displayed and the setting cannot be made. (📖 p. 238)
  - When “LFE+Main” is selected, speakers can be set regardless of the “Speaker Config.” setting. (📖 p. 238)
- The audio settings in “IMAX Audio Settings” are applied during IMAX playback. (📖 p. 185)



## Bass

Set subwoofer and LFE signal range playback.

### ■ Subwoofer Mode

Select low range signals to be reproduced by subwoofer.

<b>LFE</b> (Default):	The low range signal of the channel set to "Small" speaker size is added to the LFE signal output from the subwoofer.
<b>LFE+Main:</b>	The low range signal of all channels is added to the LFE signal output from the subwoofer.



- "Subwoofer Mode" can be set when "Speaker Config." - "Subwoofer" in the menu is set to other than "None". (🔍 p. 238)
- Play music or a movie source and select the mode offering the strongest bass.
- If "Speaker Config." - "Front" and "Center" are set to "Large", and "Subwoofer Mode" is set to "LFE", no sound may be output from the subwoofers, depending on the input signal or selected sound mode. (🔍 p. 238)  
Select "LFE+Main" if you want the bass signals to always be produced from the subwoofer.
- The audio settings in "IMAX Audio Settings" are applied during IMAX playback. (🔍 p. 185)

### ■ LPF for LFE

Set LFE signal playback range. Set this when you want to change the playback frequency (low pass filter point) of the subwoofer.

**80 Hz / 90 Hz / 100 Hz / 110 Hz / 120 Hz / 150 Hz / 180 Hz / 200 Hz / 250 Hz** (Default: 120 Hz)



- The audio settings in "IMAX Audio Settings" are applied during IMAX playback. (🔍 p. 185)



## Front Speaker

Set the front speaker A/B to use for every sound mode.

<b>A</b> (Default):	Front speaker A is used.
<b>B :</b>	Front speaker B is used.
<b>A+B :</b>	Both front speakers A and B are used.



- This can be set when "Assign Mode" is set to "11.1ch + Front B". (🔍 p. 229)

## 2ch Playback

Select the method for setting the speakers used in the 2-channel direct and stereo playback modes.

### ■ Setting

Select the method for setting the speakers used in the 2-channel direct and stereo playback modes.

**Auto**  
(Default): The settings in "Speakers" are applied.  
(🔍 p. 217)

**Manual:** Set the speakers for 2-channel playback.  
Make the following settings:

### ■ Front

Set the size of the front speakers for 2-channel playback.

**Large**  
(Default): Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.

**Small:** Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.



- When "Speaker Config." - "Subwoofer" in the menu is set to "None", "Large" is automatically set. (🔍 p. 238)





## ■ Subwoofer

Set the presence of a subwoofer.

<b>Yes</b> (Default):	Use a subwoofer.
<b>No:</b>	Select when a subwoofer is not connected.



- When "Speaker Config." - "Subwoofer" in the menu is set to "None", No is automatically set. (🔍 p. 238)  
If the "Front" setting is "Small", the setting is automatically "Yes".

## ■ SW Mode

Select low range signals to be reproduced by subwoofer.

<b>LFE</b> (Default):	When "2ch Playback" - "Front" is set to "Large", only LFE signals are output from the subwoofer. Also, when "2ch Playback" - "Front" is set to "Small", the front channel low range signals are added to the LFE signals and output from the subwoofer.
<b>LFE+Main:</b>	The front channel low range signal is added to the LFE signal output from the subwoofer.



- This can be set when "2ch Playback" - "Subwoofer" is set to "Yes".



## ■ Crossover

Set the maximum frequency of the bass signal output from each channel to the subwoofer.

**40 Hz / 60 Hz / 80 Hz / 90 Hz / 100 Hz / 110 Hz / 120 Hz / 150 Hz / 180 Hz / 200 Hz / 250 Hz** (Default: 80 Hz)



- This can be set when “2ch Playback” - “Subwoofer” is set to “Yes”.
- When “2ch Playback” - “Front” is set to “Large” and “SW Mode” is set to “LFE”, “Full Band” is displayed and this cannot be set.

## ■ Distance FL / Distance FR

Set distance from main listening position to speaker.

**0.00 m – 18.00 m** (Default : 3.60 m) /  
**0.0 ft – 60.0 ft** (Default : 12.0 ft)



- Set the difference in the distance between the speakers to less than 6.00 m (20.0 ft).

## ■ Level FL / Level FR

Adjust the level of each channel.

**-12.0 dB – +12.0 dB** (Default: 0.0 dB)



# Network

To use this unit by connecting it to a home network (LAN), you must configure network settings.

If you set up your home network (LAN) via DHCP, set “DHCP” to “On”. (Use the default setting.) This allows this unit to use your home network (LAN).

When assigning an IP address to each device manually, you need to assign an IP address to this unit using the “IP Address” settings, and enter information about your home network (LAN) such as the gateway address and subnet mask, etc.

## Information

Display network information.

---

**Friendly Name / Connection / SSID / DHCP / IP Address /  
MAC Address (Ethernet) / MAC Address (Wi-Fi) /  
Wi-Fi signal strength**

---

## Connection

Choose whether to connect the home network to a wireless LAN or a wired LAN.

When connecting to the network using wired LAN, select “Wired (Ethernet)” after connecting a LAN cable.

When connecting to the network using wireless LAN, select “Wireless (Wi-Fi)” and configure the “Wi-Fi Setup”. (☞ p. 252)

### ■ Connect Using

Select the method for connecting to the home network (LAN).

<b>Wired (Ethernet):</b>	Use a LAN cable to connect to a network.
<b>Wireless (Wi-Fi) (Default):</b>	Use the wireless LAN (Wi-Fi) function to connect to a network.



## Wi-Fi Setup

Connect to a wireless LAN (Wi-Fi) router.

The router can be connected in the following ways. Select the connection method to suit your home environment.

### ■ Scan Networks

Select the network you wish to connect to from the list of possible networks shown on the TV screen.

1. Select the network you wish to connect to from the list of wireless networks.

Select "Rescan" if the network cannot be found.

2. Enter your password and select "OK".

### ■ Use iOS Device

Use your iOS device (iPhone/iPod/iPad) to connect to the network. By connecting your iOS device to this unit using Wi-Fi, the unit can be automatically connected to the same network as your device.

1. Select "Use iOS Device" on the TV screen.
2. Check that your iOS device is connected to the wireless LAN (Wi-Fi) router and select "Denon AVC-X8500H" from "SET UP NEW AIRPLAY SPEAKER..." at the bottom of the Wi-Fi configuration screen of your iOS device.
3. Tap "Next" on the screen of the iOS device.



- The iOS device firmware version needs to support iOS 7 or later.



## ■ WPS Router

Use a WPS-compatible router to connect using the push button method.

1. Select "Push Button" on the TV screen.
2. Switch to the WPS mode by pressing the WPS button of the router you wish to connect to.
  - The time for pressing the button varies depending on the router.
3. Select "Connect" on the TV screen within 2 minutes.

## ■ Manual

Enter the name (SSID) and password of the network you wish to connect to.

1. Set the following items.

<b>SSID:</b>	Input the name of the wireless network (SSID).
<b>Security:</b>	Select the encryption method according to the encryption setting of the access point you are using.
<b>Password:</b>	Input the password.

2. Select "Connect" at the end of the setting.



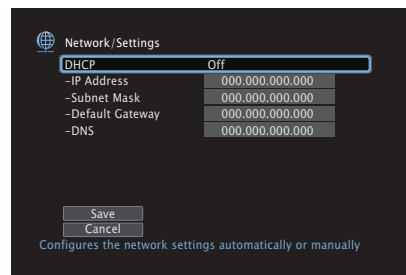


- The wireless LAN (Wi-Fi) settings of this unit can also be configured from a PC or tablet that supports wireless LAN connection.
  1. Press and hold the DIMMER and STATUS buttons on the main unit for at least 3 seconds when the power of the unit is on.
  2. Connect the wireless LAN of the PC or tablet used to “Denon AVC-X8500H” when the message “Connect your Wi-Fi device to Wi-Fi network called “Denon AVC-X8500H”.” appears in the display.
  3. Start up the browser and enter “192.168.1.16/settings/” in the URL.
  4. Use the browser to enter the settings, select “Connect” and then exit the settings.
- The Default key of this unit is fixed at “1”. Set Default key of the router to “1” to use.

## Settings

Configure the IP address.

- If you are using a broadband router (DHCP function), the information required for network connection such as the IP address will be automatically configured since the DHCP function is set to “On” in the default settings of this unit.
- Set up the IP Address, Subnet Mask, Default Gateway and DNS server information only when assigning a fixed IP address or when connecting to a network without DHCP function.



## ■ DHCP

Selects how to connect to the network.

<b>On</b> (Default):	Configure the network settings automatically from your router.
<b>Off:</b>	Configure the network settings manually.

## ■ IP Address

Set the IP address within the ranges shown below.

- The Network Audio function cannot be used if other IP addresses are set.

CLASS A: 10.0.0.1 - 10.255.255.254

CLASS B: 172.16.0.1 - 172.31.255.254

CLASS C: 192.168.0.1 - 192.168.255.254

## ■ Subnet Mask

When connecting an xDSL modem or connector adapter directly to this unit, input the subnet mask indicated in the documentation supplied by your provider. Normally input "255.255.255.0".

## ■ Default Gateway

When connected to a gateway (router), input its IP address.

## ■ DNS

Enter the DNS address indicated in the documentation supplied by your provider.



- If you cannot connect to the Internet, recheck the connections and settings. (p. 95)
- If you do not understand about Internet connection, contact your ISP (Internet Service Provider) or the store from which you purchased your computer.



## Network Control

Enables network communication in standby power mode.

### Off In Standby (Default):

Suspend network function during standby.

### Always On:

Network is on during standby. Main unit operable with a network compatible controller.



- When using the web control function, Denon 2016 AVR Remote App or HEOS App, use with the “Network Control” setting set to “Always On”.

#### NOTE

- When “Network Control” is set to “Always On”, the unit consumes more standby power.

## Friendly Name

The Friendly Name is the name of this unit displayed on the network. You can change the Friendly Name according to your preferences.

### ■ Friendly Name

Selects Friendly Name from the list.

When you select “Other”, you can change the Friendly Name according to your preferences.

**Home Theater / Living Room / Family Room / Guest Room / Kitchen / Dining Room / Master Bedroom / Bedroom / Den / Office / Other**



- Up to 30 characters can be input.
- The default Friendly Name on first use is “Denon AVC-X8500H”.

### ■ Set Defaults

Restores Friendly Name, which you had changed, to the default setting.





## Diagnostics

Used to check the network connection.

### ■ Physical Connection

Checks the physical LAN port connection.

---

**OK**

**Error:** The LAN cable is not connected. Check the connection.

---



- When connected using a wireless LAN, "Connection Wireless (Wi-Fi)" will be displayed.

### ■ Router Access

Checks the connection from this unit to the router.

---

**OK**

**Error:** Failed to communicate with the router. Check the router settings.

---

### ■ Internet Access

Checks whether this unit has access to the Internet (WAN).

---

**OK**

**Error:** Failed to connect to the Internet. Check the Internet connection environment or router settings.

---



# HEOS Account

Make HEOS Account-related settings.

HEOS Account is needed in order to use HEOS Favorites.

The menu displayed differs depending on the status of the HEOS Account.

## You have not signed in

### ■ I have a HEOS Account

If you already have a HEOS Account, enter the current account name and password to sign in.

### ■ Create Account

If you do not have a HEOS Account, create a new HEOS Account.

### ■ Forgot Password

If you have forgotten the password, an email explaining how to reset the password will be sent.

## You have already signed in

### ■ Signed in As

The currently signed in HEOS Account is displayed.

### ■ Change Location

Change the regional settings for the signed in HEOS Account.

### ■ Change Password

Change the password for the signed in HEOS Account.

### ■ Delete Account

Delete the signed in HEOS Account.

### ■ Sign Out

Sign out from the HEOS Account.



# General

Make various other settings.

## Language

Set the language for display the menu on the TV screen.

**English / Deutsch / Français / Italiano / Español / Nederlands / Svenska / Русский / Polski** (Default : English)



- "Language" can also be set up by the following operation. However, the menu screen is not displayed. Watch the display while configuring the settings.
  1. Press and hold the main unit's STATUS and ZONE3 SOURCE at the same time for at least 3 seconds.  
" \*Video Format <PAL>" appears on the display.
  2. Use  $\Delta$  or  $\nabla$  on the main unit twice.  
" \*GUI Language <ENGLISH>" appears on the display.
  3. Use the main unit's  $\langle$  or  $\rangle$  and set the language.
  4. Press the main unit's ENTER to complete the setting.

## ECO

Configure the ECO Mode and auto standby mode settings.

### ■ ECO Mode

This mode can reduce the power consumption and heat generation of this unit when power on.

This is done by reducing the power supply line to the power amplifier, in turn the maximum power output.




---

<b>On:</b>	Power savings are always active, regardless of volume or input signal.
	Gives you the best balance between power savings and maximum power output: For low volume levels, the power savings are active. If you increase the volume level, the power savings are switched off automatically, so you can enjoy maximum output power without distortion.
<b>Auto</b> (Default):	If the volume is set to a high level but no input signal is detected for more than 2 minutes, this unit will enable power savings. When an input signal is detected again or the input source is changed, this unit will automatically turn off power savings again at high volume levels.
<b>Off:</b>	No power savings.

---



- When the unit is switching between the different power saving states in “ECO Mode: Auto”, you may notice a click noise from the inside of this unit, this is normal.
- If content is paused for more than 2 minutes and playback is resumed from the same source at these high volume levels, there may be short delay before maximum power is restored.
- “ECO Mode” can also be switched by pressing ECO  on the remote control unit.



## ■ Power On Default

Set the mode to ECO when the power is on.

<b>Last (Default):</b>	The ECO Mode will be set to the previous setting before the power was switched off.
<b>On:</b>	When power is turned on, the mode will always be switched to the ECO Mode in "On".
<b>Auto:</b>	When power is turned on, the mode will always be switched to the ECO Mode in "Auto".
<b>Off:</b>	When power is turned on, the mode will always be switched to the ECO Mode in "Off".

## ■ On Screen Display

Display the power consumption of this unit using a meter on the TV screen.

<b>Always On:</b>	Always display the meter on the TV screen.
<b>Auto (Default):</b>	Display the meter when changing the mode or volume.
<b>Off:</b>	Do not display the meter.



## ■ Auto Standby

Set so the unit power automatically switches to standby.

### □ MAIN ZONE

Sets the time for switching to auto standby when there are no audio or video signals input into this unit.

Before the unit enters standby mode, "Auto Standby" is displayed on the unit display and the menu screen.

<b>60 min:</b>	The unit goes into standby after 60 minutes.
<b>30 min:</b>	The unit goes into standby after 30 minutes.
<b>15 min (Default):</b>	The unit goes into standby after 15 minutes.
<b>Off:</b>	The unit does not go into standby automatically.

### □ ZONE2 / ZONE3

When there are no operations for a certain period of time as set here, the power is automatically shut off even if there is audio or video input.

<b>8 hours:</b>	Switches ZONE2/ZONE3 the standby state after about 8 hours.
<b>4 hours:</b>	Switches ZONE2/ZONE3 to the standby state after about 4 hours.
<b>2 hours:</b>	Switches ZONE2/ZONE3 to the standby state after about 2 hours.
<b>Off (Default):</b>	Does not automatically switch ZONE2/ ZONE3 to the standby state.



## ZONE2 Setup / ZONE3 Setup

Makes settings for audio playback with ZONE2 and ZONE3.



- Values set for “Volume Limit” and “Power On Volume” are displayed according to the setting specified for the volume “Scale”. (🔗 p. 191)

### ■ Bass

Adjust bass.

**-10dB – +10dB** (Default : 0dB)

### ■ Treble

Adjust treble.

**-10dB – +10dB** (Default : 0dB)

### ■ High Pass Filter

Make settings for cutting the low range to reduce distortion in the bass.

**On:** The low range is attenuated.

**Off**  
(Default): The low range is not attenuated.

### ■ Lch Level

Adjust the left channel output level.

**-12 dB – +12 dB** (Default : 0 dB)

### ■ Rch Level

Adjust the right channel output level.

**-12 dB – +12 dB** (Default : 0 dB)

### ■ Channel

Set whether to playback in stereo or monaural.

**Stereo**  
(Default): Stereo playback.

**Mono:** Monaural playback.



## ■ HDMI Audio (ZONE2 only)

Selects the audio signal format for playing an HDMI source in ZONE2.

**Through**  
(Default): The HDMI audio signal is passed through this unit to the device in ZONE2.

**PCM:** The HDMI audio signal input into this unit is converted to a PCM signal that can be output from the ZONE2 PRE OUT connectors or speaker terminals.

## ■ Volume Level

Set the volume output level.

**Variable**  
(Default): Volume can be adjusted.

**1 – 98**  
**(–79 dB – 18 dB):** Volume is fixed at the desired level. The volume cannot be adjusting using the remote control unit.



- The dB value is displayed when the “Scale” setting is “–79.5 dB – 18.0 dB”. (🔗 p. 191)

## ■ Volume Limit

Make a setting for maximum volume.

**60 (–20 dB) / 70 (–10 dB) / 80 (0 dB)**  
(Default : 70 (–10 dB))

**Off:** Do not set a maximum volume.



- This can be set when “Volume Level” is set to “Variable”. (🔗 p. 264)
- The dB value is displayed when the “Scale” setting is “–79.5 dB – 18.0 dB”. (🔗 p. 191)

## ■ Power On Volume

Define the volume setting that is active when the power is turned on.

**Last**  
(Default): Use the memorized setting from the last session.

**Mute:** Always mute when power is turned on.

**1 – 98**  
**(–79 dB – 18 dB):** The volume is adjusted to the set level.



- This can be set when “Volume Level” is set to “Variable”. (🔗 p. 264)
- The dB value is displayed when the “Scale” setting is “–79.5 dB – 18.0 dB”. (🔗 p. 191)





## ■ Mute Level

Set the amount of attenuation when muting is on.

<b>Full</b> (Default):	The sound is muted entirely.
<b>-40 dB :</b>	The sound is attenuated by 40 dB down.
<b>-20 dB :</b>	The sound is attenuated by 20 dB down.

## Zone Rename

Change the display title of each zone to one you prefer.

### MAIN ZONE / ZONE2 / ZONE3

**Set Defaults:** The default setting is restored for the edited zone name.



- Up to 10 characters can be input.

## Quick Select Names

Change the quick select name that appears on the TV screen to one you prefer.

### Quick Select 1 / Quick Select 2 / Quick Select 3 / Quick Select 4

**Set Defaults:** The default setting is restored for the edited quick select name.



- Up to 16 characters can be input.



## Trigger Out 1 / Trigger Out 2

Select the conditions for activating trigger out.

For details about how to connect the TRIGGER OUT jacks, see “TRIGGER OUT jacks” (👉 p. 98).

### ❑ When setting for zone (MAIN ZONE / ZONE2 / ZONE3)

Trigger out is activated through linkage to the power of the zone set to “On”.

### ❑ When setting for input source

Activate trigger out when the input source set to “On” is selected.

### ❑ When setting for HDMI monitor

Activate trigger out when the HDMI monitor set to “On” is selected.

On:	Activate trigger on this mode.
---:	Do not activate trigger on this mode.

## Front Display

Makes settings related to the display on this unit.

### ■ Dimmer

Adjust the display brightness of this unit.

<b>Bright</b> (Default):	Normal display brightness.
<b>Dim:</b>	Reduced display brightness.
<b>Dark:</b>	Very low display brightness.
<b>Off:</b>	Turns the display off.



- You can also adjust the display by pressing DIMMER on the main unit.



## ■ Channel Indicators

Sets whether to use the input signal display or output signal display for the channel indication on the display.

<b>Input:</b>	Uses the input signal display for the channel indication on the display.
<b>Output (Default):</b>	Uses the output signal display for the channel indication on the display.

## Firmware

Checks for the latest firmware information about updates and upgrades, updates the firmware, and sets up the notification message display for upgrades.

### ■ Check for Update

Check for firmware updates.

The firmware can be updated if a firmware update has been released.

<b>Update Now:</b>	Execute the update process. When the update starts, the menu screen is shut down. During the update, the progress is shown on the display.
<b>Update Later:</b>	Update later.



- This unit automatically retries updating if updating fails. If an update still cannot be performed, an "Update Error" message appears in the display. See "Troubleshooting" – "Update/upgrade error messages" for information on update error messages. (🔍 p. 313)  
Check the conditions according to the message and try the update again.
- This menu cannot be selected when "Allow Update" is set to "Off".



## ■ Auto-Update

Turns on Automatic Updates so that futures updates are automatically downloaded and installed when this unit is in standby mode.

### □ Auto-Update

This unit will automatically update to the newest firmware when in standby mode.

**On:** Turns on Automatic Updates.

**Off**  
(Default): Turns off Automatic Updates.

### □ Time Zone

Change the time zone.

Set the time zone that matches the area where you live.



- This menu cannot be selected when "Allow Update" is set to "Off".

## ■ Allow Update

Enable or disable updates and upgrades for this unit.

**On**  
(Default): Enables this unit to receive updates and upgrades.

**Off:** Prevents this unit from receiving update and upgrade.



- This setting causes Incompatibilities between this unit and HEOS App.

## ■ Upgrade Notification

When the latest Upgrade firmware is available, a notification message is displayed on the TV screen at power on.

The notification message is displayed for about 40 seconds when the power is turned on.

**On**  
(Default): Display upgrade message.

**Off:** Do not display upgrade message.



- This menu cannot be selected when "Allow Update" is set to "Off".



## ■ Add New Feature

Display new features that can be downloaded to this unit and perform an upgrade.

<b>Upgrade Package:</b>	Display the items to be upgraded.
<b>Upgrade Status:</b>	Display a list of the additional functions provided by the upgrade.
<b>Upgrade:</b>	Execute the upgrade process. When the upgrade starts, the menu screen is shut down. During the upgrade, the amount of upgrade time which has elapsed is displayed.



- Information regarding the “Update” function and “Add New Feature” will be announced on the Denon website each time related plans are defined. See the Denon website for details about upgrades.
- When the procedure is complete, “Registered” is displayed in this menu and upgrades can be carried out. If the procedure has not been carried out, “Not Registered” is displayed.  
The ID number shown on this screen is needed when carrying out the procedure.  
The ID number can also be displayed by pressing and holding the main unit’s  $\Delta$  and INFO for at least 3 seconds.
- If the upgrade is not successful, “Upgrade Error” message appears in the display. See “Troubleshooting” – “Update/upgrade error messages” for information on upgrade error messages. (☞ p. 313)  
Check the settings and network environment and then perform the upgrade again.
- This menu cannot be selected when “Allow Update” is set to “Off”.

### Notes concerning use of “Update” and “Add New Feature”

- In order to use these functions, you must have the correct system requirements and settings for an Internet connection. (☞ p. 95)
- Do not turn off the power until updating or upgrading is completed.
- Approximately 1 hour is required for the updating/upgrading procedure to be completed.
- Once updating/upgrade starts, normal operations on this unit cannot be performed until updating/upgrading is completed. Furthermore, there may be cases where backup data is reset for the parameters, etc., set on this unit.
- If the update or upgrade fails, press and hold the  $\text{O}$  on the main unit for more than 5 seconds, or remove and re-insert the power cord. After about 1 minute, “Please wait” appears on the display and update restarts. If the error continues, check the network environment.



## Information

Show information about this unit settings, input signals, etc.

### ■ Audio

Show the audio information for MAIN ZONE.

<b>Sound Mode:</b>	The currently set sound mode.
<b>Input Signal:</b>	The input signal type.
<b>Format:</b>	The number of input signal channels (presence of front, surround, LFE).
<b>Sample Rate:</b>	The input signal's sampling frequency.
<b>Offset:</b>	The dialogue normalization correction value.
<b>Flag:</b>	This is displayed when inputting signals including a surround back channel. "MATRIX" is displayed with DTS-ES Matrix input signals, "DISCRETE" with DTS-ES Discrete signals.

### ■ Video

Show the HDMI input/output signals and HDMI monitor information for MAIN ZONE.

#### HDMI Signal Info.

**Resolution / HDR / Color Space / Pixel Depth / ALLM / QMS / QFT / FRL Rate**

#### HDMI Monitor 1 / HDMI Monitor 2

**Interface / HDR / Resolutions / Enhanced Features / Max FRL Rate**



- A or B may be displayed at the end of resolution. A represents uncompressed video and B represents compressed video.
- Refer to "About HDMI" for more information about ALLM, QMS, QFT, and FRL. (📖 p. 319)

### ■ ZONE

Show information about current settings.

<b>MAIN ZONE:</b>	This item shows information about settings for MAIN ZONE. The information displayed differs according to the input source.
<b>ZONE2/3:</b>	This item shows information about settings for ZONE2 and ZONE3.



## ■ Firmware

<b>Version:</b>	Displays information for the current firmware.
<b>DTS Version:</b>	Displays the current DTS version.

## ■ Notifications

Displays and sets notifications.

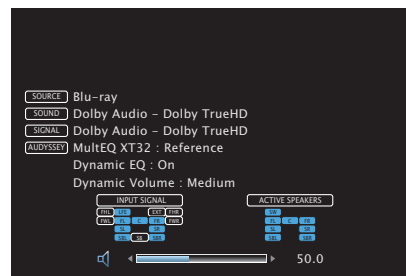
Also, sets whether or not to display the notification when the power is turned on.

### Notification Alerts

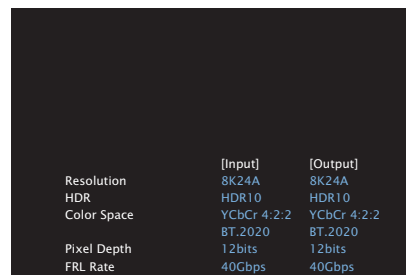
<b>On</b> (Default):	Notification messages are displayed.
<b>Off:</b>	Notification messages are not displayed.



- Press INFO on the remote control unit to display current source name, volume, sound mode name, and other information at the bottom of the screen.



Press INFO again while the information screen is displayed to display information about video input and output signals. The FRL Rate is displayed when the "4K/8K Signal Format" setting of this unit is "8K Enhanced" and the connected TV supports FRL transmission mode.



## Remote ID

Set when you operate another Denon AV amplifier with the remote control unit of this unit. Match the remote control unit you are using with the remote ID of this unit.

### ■ Settings

#### 1 Press ZONE SELECT to switch the zone mode.

The **M** indicator lights.

#### 2 Press SETUP.

The menu is displayed on the TV screen.

#### 3 Use $\Delta$ / $\nabla$ to select “General”, then press ENTER.

#### 4 Use $\Delta$ / $\nabla$ to select “Remote ID”, then press ENTER.

#### 5 Change the ID for the remote control unit. (👉 p. 289)

#### 6 Press ENTER.

The Remote ID for this unit is set to the same ID as the one for the remote control unit.

## Usage Data

To help us improve our products and customer service, Denon collects anonymous information about how you use this unit (such as frequently used input sources and sound modes and speaker settings).

Denon will never provide any information we collect to third parties.

<b>Yes:</b>	Provide information on the operating status of this unit.
<b>No:</b>	Do not provide information on the operating status of this unit.





## Save & Load

Save and restore device settings by using a USB memory device.



- Use a USB memory device that has at least 128 MB of free space and is formatted to FAT32. Data may not Save/Load correctly to some USB memory devices.
- It may take up to 10 minutes for data to Save/Load. Do not turn off the power until the process is complete.

### ■ Save Configuration

Current unit settings are stored on the USB memory device.

When the settings are saved correctly, “Saved” appears on the display and the file “config.avr” is created on the USB memory device.



- Do not change the file name of the created file. Doing so will prevent the file from being recognized as a settings file when restoring.

### ■ Load Configuration

Settings saved on the USB memory device are restored.

When the saved settings are restored correctly, “Loaded” appears on the display and the unit automatically restarts.

## Setup Lock

Protect settings from inadvertent changes.

### ■ Lock

---

**On:** Turn protection on.

---

**Off (Default):** Turn protection off.

---



- When cancelling the setting, set “Lock” to “Off”.

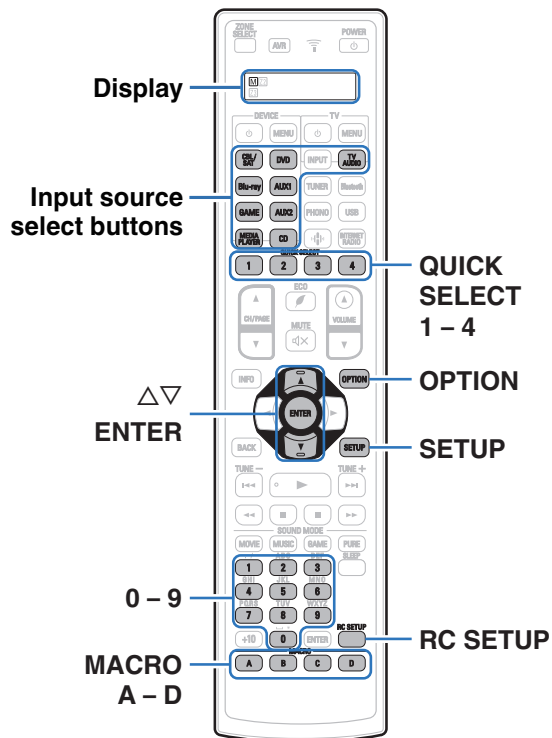
#### NOTE

- When “Lock” is set to “On”, no setting items are displayed except for “Setup Lock”.



## Operating external devices with the remote control unit

When preset codes are registered in the included remote control unit, it can then be used to operate any devices you have, such as DVD players or TVs made by different manufacturers.



## Registering preset codes

There are two methods for registering preset codes; the simple method for registering preset codes of Denon players, and the method for registering the preset numbers of other manufacturers' devices.

- “Registering Denon players” (👉 p. 275)
- “Registering by entering preset numbers” (👉 p. 276)

### ■ Registering Denon players

Use the following simple method to register the preset codes of Denon Blu-ray Disc players, DVD players and CD players.

#### □ Registering Blu-ray Disc players

- 1 Press and hold down Blu-ray and OPTION until “OK” indicator on the remote control display is flashing, then release.

#### □ Registering DVD players

- 1 Press and hold down DVD and OPTION until “OK” indicator on the remote control display is flashing, then release.

#### □ Registering CD players

- 1 Press and hold down CD and OPTION until “OK” indicator on the remote control display is flashing, then release.



## ❑ Registering multiple players at the same time

- 1 Press and hold down QUICK SELECT 1 – 4 and OPTION until “OK” indicator on the remote control display is flashing, then release.

Devices to be registered at the same time			Press and hold down the buttons
Blu-ray Disc player	DVD player	CD player	
✓	✓		QUICK SELECT 1 and OPTION
✓		✓	QUICK SELECT 2 and OPTION
	✓	✓	QUICK SELECT 3 and OPTION
✓	✓	✓	QUICK SELECT 4 and OPTION










### NOTE

- Depending on the model and year of manufacture of your device, some buttons may not operate. In this case, try “Registering by entering preset numbers” (🔧 p. 276).


## ■ Registering by entering preset numbers

The following table shows the device groups that can be registered for each of the input source select buttons. Check the preset number of the device you want to register beforehand in the “Remote Control Preset Codes” file.

<http://manuals.denon.com/AVCX8500H/preset/AVCX8500HPresetCodes.pdf>

Button	Device groups that can be registered
	CBL/SAT group
	VCR/PVR group, BD/DVD group
	CBL/SAT group, VCR/PVR group, BD/DVD group, Audio group
	CBL/SAT group
	VCR/PVR group, BD/DVD group
	CBL/SAT group, VCR/PVR group, BD/DVD group, Audio group
	CBL/SAT group, VCR/PVR group, BD/DVD group, Audio group
	Audio group
	TV group



- 1 Press and hold RC SETUP for more than 3 seconds.**  
“SETUP” and  indicator flashes twice on the remote control unit.
- 2 When “PRSET” appears on the remote control unit, press ENTER.**
- 3 When “DEVIC” appears on the remote control unit, press the input source select button of the AV equipment (CBL/SAT, Blu-ray, GAME, MEDIA PLAYER, DVD, AUX1, AUX2 or CD) that you want to program for the preset setting.**
- 4 When “----” appears on the remote control unit, press the number buttons 0 – 9 to enter a 5-digit code.**  
Press the buttons with an interval less than 30 seconds.
  - When the code is registered, “OK” flashes four times on the remote control unit.
  - When the code is not registered correctly, “FAIL” or “CANCL” flashes four times on the remote control unit. Perform from step 1 again.



- Some manufacturers use more than one type of preset code. Preset codes to change the number and verify correct operation.
- To unregister the device from a button and reset to the default setting, set the AVR code “73347” to the button.

**NOTE**

- Depending on the model and year of manufacture of your device, some buttons may not operate.



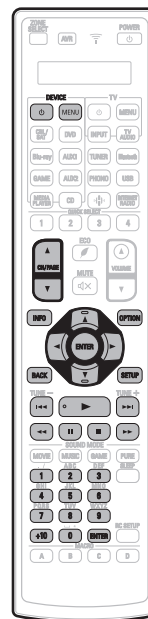
## Operating devices

To operate an external device, press the input source button registered with the preset code, followed by one of the buttons in the following tables.



- The input source name is displayed on the remote control unit when an external device is being operated.
- The “TV” is displayed on the remote control unit when the TV is being operated.
- To operate the menu of this unit, press AVR before operating the unit. The “AVR” is displayed on the remote control unit when this unit is being operated.

### ❑ CBL/SAT group (Set top box for satellite (SAT)/cable TV (CBL)/ Media player/IP TV) operation



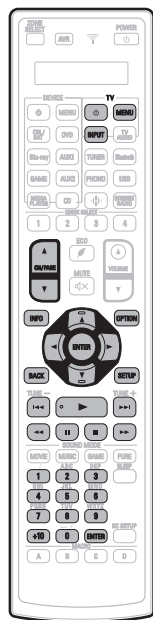
Operation buttons	Function
<b>DEVICE</b>	Power on/off
<b>DEVICE MENU</b>	Menu
<b>CH/PAGE</b>	Switch channels (up/down)
<b>INFO</b>	Information
<b>OPTION</b>	Sub menu, Option
	Cursor operation
<b>ENTER</b> (Cursor)	Enter
<b>BACK</b>	Back
<b>SETUP</b>	Home menu
	Skip chapter
	Playback
	Fast-reverse / Fast-forward
	Pause
	Stop
<b>0 - 9, +10</b>	Channel selection
<b>ENTER</b> (Number)	3 digit entry



- Depending on the device, the **DEVICE** button only performs the power-on operation.

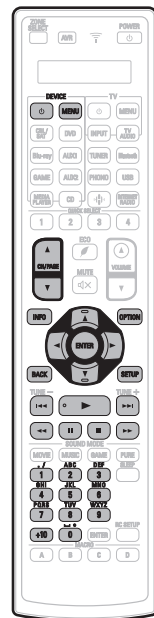


## TV group (TV) operation



Operation buttons	Function
TV $\phi$	TV power on/off
TV INPUT	Switch TV input
TV MENU	TV menu
CH/PAGE $\blacktriangle$ $\blacktriangledown$	Switch channels (up/down)
INFO	Information
OPTION	Sub menu, Option
$\Delta$ $\nabla$ $\triangleleft$ $\triangleright$	Cursor operation
ENTER(Cursor)	Enter
BACK	Back
SETUP	Setup
$\lll$ $\lll$ $\lll$ $\lll$	Skip chapter
$\blacktriangleright$	Playback
$\lll$ $\lll$ $\lll$ $\lll$	Fast-reverse / Fast-forward
$\parallel$	Pause
$\blacksquare$	Stop
0 - 9, +10	Channel selection
ENTER(Number)	3 digit entry

## VCR/PVR group (Video cassette recorder (VCR)/personal video recorder (PVR)) operation



Operation buttons	Function
DEVICE $\phi$	Power on/off
DEVICE MENU	Menu
CH/PAGE $\blacktriangle$ $\blacktriangledown$	Switch channels (up/down)
INFO	Information
OPTION	Sub menu, Option
$\Delta$ $\nabla$ $\triangleleft$ $\triangleright$	Cursor operation
ENTER	Enter
BACK	Back
SETUP	Setup
$\lll$ $\lll$ $\lll$ $\lll$	Skip chapter
$\blacktriangleright$	Playback
$\lll$ $\lll$ $\lll$ $\lll$	Fast-reverse / Fast-forward
$\parallel$	Pause
$\blacksquare$	Stop
0 - 9, +10	Select title, chapter or channel selection



- Depending on the device, the power may not be turned off for the DEVICE  $\phi$  and TV  $\phi$  buttons.
- TV  $\phi$  and TV INPUT buttons can be operated at any time without pressing the TV button.



## BD/DVD group (Blu-ray Disc player/HD-DVD player/DVD player/DVD recorder) operation



Operation buttons	Function
<b>DEVICE</b>	Power on/off
<b>DEVICE MENU</b>	(Popup) Menu
<b>CH/PAGE</b>	Switch channels (up/down)
<b>INFO</b>	Information
<b>OPTION</b>	Top menu
	Cursor operation
<b>ENTER</b>	Enter
<b>BACK</b>	Back
<b>SETUP</b>	Setup
	Skip chapter
	Playback
	Fast-reverse / Fast-forward
	Pause
	Stop
<b>0 - 9, +10</b>	Select title, chapter or channel selection

## Audio group (CD player/CD recorder) operation



Operation buttons	Function
<b>DEVICE</b>	Power on/off
<b>INFO</b>	Information
	Cursor operation
<b>ENTER</b>	Enter
	Skip track
	Playback
	Fast-reverse / Fast-forward
	Pause
	Stop
<b>0 - 9, +10</b>	Track selection



- Depending on the device, the DEVICE button only performs the power-on operation. (Depending on the device, some Denon models can only be operated with the power turned on.)






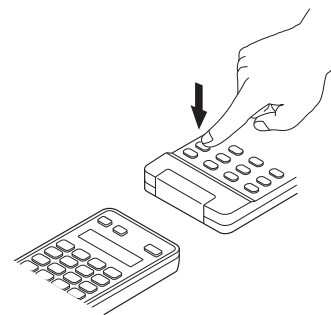
## Operating learning function

If the unit does not operate even when the preset code is registered, use the learning function. Remote codes for different devices can be remembered for use by the Denon remote control included with this unit.

### ■ Remembering remote control codes from other devices

- 1** Press and hold RC SETUP for more than 3 seconds.  
“SETUP” and  indicator flashes twice on the remote control unit.
- 2** Use  $\Delta \nabla$  to display “LEARN” on the remote control unit and press ENTER.
- 3** When “DEVIC” appears on the remote control unit, press the input source select button of the AV equipment that you want to store.
  - You cannot store the remote control code in the AVR button.
  - Before using the learning function, register a preset code for a mode other than AVR preset to each input source switch button. (“Registering preset codes” (🔗 p. 275))

- 4** When “KEY” appears on the remote control unit, press the button that you want to store.
- 5** When “READY” appears on the remote control unit, place the remote control unit of the AV equipment face to face with main remote control unit (of this unit). Next, press and hold down the desired button (that you want to store) of the remote control unit of the AV equipment.



- When the button is correctly stored, “OK” flashes four times on the remote control unit.
- If the button is not correctly stored, “FAIL” flashes four times on the remote control unit. If this happens, perform step 4 again.



**6** To store another button, repeat steps 4 and 5.

**7** When you have finished storing the remote control codes, press RC SETUP.

“OK” flashes four times on the remote control unit and the normal operation mode is restored.



- There are some remote control units that cannot be programmed, or even if they can be programmed, they may not operate correctly. If this happens, use the remote control unit supplied with the AV equipment to operate it.
- The operations of the programmed buttons override the preset memory. If you do not require the programmed buttons, erase the stored remote control codes to return to the initial settings. (✎ p. 283)
- The number of buttons that can be stored varies depending on the remote control unit used. If you have stored the maximum number of buttons allowed for the remote control unit, “FAIL” appears on its display.


#### NOTE

- You cannot store the remote control code in the ZONE SELECT, RC SETUP, POWER  $\phi$ , QUICK SELECT 1 – 4, ECO, SOUND MODE, SLEEP, MACRO A – D and input source select button.




## ■ Erasing stored remote control codes

### □ Erasing the code by each button

- 1 Press and hold RC SETUP for more than 3 seconds.**  
“SETUP” and  indicator flashes twice on the remote control unit.
- 2 Use  $\Delta\nabla$  to display “RESET” on the remote control unit and press ENTER.**
- 3 When “LEARN” appears on the remote control unit, press ENTER.**
- 4 When “DEVIC” appears on the remote control unit, press the input source select button of the AV equipment that you want to erase.**
- 5 Use  $\Delta\nabla$  to display “ONE” on the remote control unit and press ENTER.**
- 6 When “KEY” appears on the remote control unit, press the button that you want to erase.**  
“RESET” flashes four times on the remote control unit and the normal operation mode is restored.

### □ Erasing the code by each equipment input source

- 1 Press and hold RC SETUP for more than 3 seconds.**  
“SETUP” and  indicator flashes twice on the remote control unit.
- 2 Use  $\Delta\nabla$  to display “RESET” on the remote control unit and press ENTER.**
- 3 When “LEARN” appears on the remote control unit, press ENTER.**
- 4 When “DEVIC” appears on the remote control unit, press the input source select button of the AV equipment that you want to erase.**
- 5 When “ALL” appears, press ENTER.**  
“RESET” flashes four times on the remote control unit and the normal operation mode is restored.



## Operating macro function

- When the macro function is used, operations that usually require a complicated series of multiple button operations can be performed easily just by pressing the MACRO button.
- This unit can remember up to 4 macro functions.
- Each macro can record a maximum of 18 steps.

### 【 Example 】

When the following set of operations has been registered to the MACRO button, you can simply press the MACRO button to turn on the TV and this unit and start playing back Blu-ray Disc player.

- ① Turn the TV's power on.  
↓
- ② Turn this unit's power on.  
↓
- ③ Switch this unit's input source to "Blu-ray".  
↓
- ④ Turn the Blu-ray Disc player's power on.  
↓
- ⑤ Play the Blu-ray Disc player.

## ■ Recording automatic macro operations


You can automatically set the macro for your scene.

1. Watch movies (MOVIE)
2. Listen to music (MUSIC)
3. Watch TV (CBL/SAT) (WATCH)
4. Turn on all devices (ON)
5. Turn off all devices (OFF)

### NOTE

- Register preset codes for the remote control unit before setting Auto macro. (☞ p. 275)
- Depending on the type or model of your device, macro may not work properly even if it is set.




- 1** Press and hold RC SETUP for more than 3 seconds.  
“SETUP” and  indicator flashes twice on the remote control unit.
- 2** Use  $\Delta\nabla$  to display “MACRO” on the remote control unit and press ENTER.
- 3** Use  $\Delta\nabla$  to display “AUTO” on the remote control unit and press ENTER.
- 4** When “MCNo” appears on the remote control unit, press the MACRO A – D button that you want to set.
- 5** Use  $\Delta\nabla$  to set the auto macro operation and press ENTER.  
“OK” flashes four times on the remote control unit and the normal operation mode is restored.

Remote control unit display	Auto MACRO
MOVIE	Automatically turns on the devices and starts playback when you watch movies. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">           TV power ON            Blu-ray power ON            AVR Power ON            Source Change “Blu-ray”            Playback Blu-ray Disc         </div>
MUSIC	Automatically turns on the devices and starts playback when you listen to music. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">           CD power ON            AVR Power ON            Source Change “CD”            Playback CD         </div>
WATCH	Automatically turns on the devices and starts playback when you watch TV (CBL/SAT). <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">           TV power ON            CBL/SAT Power ON            AVR Power ON            Source Change “CBL/SAT”         </div>
ON	Turns on all the devices set for PRESET. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">           All device power on         </div>
OFF	Turns off all the devices set for PRESET. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">           All device power off         </div>



## ■ Recording custom macro operations

- 1 Press and hold RC SETUP for more than 3 seconds.**  
“SETUP” and  indicator flashes twice on the remote control unit.
- 2 Use  $\Delta$ / $\nabla$  to display “MACRO” on the remote control unit and press ENTER.**
- 3 Use  $\Delta$ / $\nabla$  to display “MAN” on the remote control unit and press ENTER.**
- 4 When “MCNo” appears on the remote control unit, press the MACRO A – D button that you want to set.**

## 5 Press the buttons to be stored one by one.

The step number for the storing procedure and mode are alternately displayed on the remote control unit.

### NOTE

- You cannot store the macros for the ZONE SELECT button.

## 6 Press RC SETUP to exit the macro function.


“OK” flashes four times on the remote control unit and the normal operation mode is restored.



## ■ Adjusting the interval time of macro operations transmitting

The macro operation transmission interval can be adjusted.

- The default setting is "0.50".

- 1 Press and hold RC SETUP for more than 3 seconds.**  
"SETUP" and  indicator flashes twice on the remote control unit.
- 2 Use  $\Delta\nabla$  to display "MACRO" on the remote control unit and press ENTER.**
- 3 Use  $\Delta\nabla$  to display "MAN" on the remote control unit and press ENTER.**
- 4 When "MCNo" appears on the remote control unit, press the MACRO A – D button that you want to set.**

**5** Press RC SETUP.

**6** Use  $\Delta\nabla$  to set the macro operation transmission interval and press ENTER.

"OK" flashes four times on the remote control unit and the normal operation mode is restored.


Remote control unit display	Time values that you can set
0.25	0.25 sec
0.50	0.5 sec
0.75	0.75 sec
1.00	1 sec
1.25	1.25 sec



## ■ Using the macro function

Press the MACRO A – D button you used to store the macro function.


## ■ Resetting the macro function

- 1 Press and hold RC SETUP for more than 3 seconds.  
“SETUP” and  indicator flashes twice on the remote control unit.
- 2 Use  $\Delta\nabla$  to display “RESET” on the remote control unit and press ENTER.
- 3 Use  $\Delta\nabla$  to display “MACRO” on the remote control unit and press ENTER.
- 4 When “MCNo” appears on the remote control unit, press the MACRO A – D button that you want to reset.  
“RESET” flashes four times on the remote control unit and the normal operation mode is restored.

## Specifying the zone used with the remote control unit

When the ZONE SELECT button is pressed, only the set zone can be operated with the remote control unit.

- The default setting is “M23”.

- 1 Press and hold RC SETUP for more than 3 seconds.  
“SETUP” and  indicator flashes twice on the remote control unit.
- 2 Use  $\Delta\nabla$  to display “ZLOCK” on the remote control unit and press ENTER.
- 3 Use  $\Delta\nabla$  to set the zone to be used and press ENTER.  
“OK” flashes four times on the remote control unit and the normal operation mode is restored.

Remote control unit display	Zone to be used
M	MAIN ZONE only
M2	MAIN ZONE / ZONE2
M23	MAIN ZONE / ZONE2 / ZONE3






## Setting the Remote ID

When using multiple Denon AV receivers in the same room, make this setting so that only the desired AV receiver operates.

- The default setting is "ID-1".

- Press and hold RC SETUP for more than 3 seconds.**  
"SETUP" and  indicator flashes twice on the remote control unit.
- Use  $\Delta\nabla$  to display "RC-ID" on the remote control unit and press ENTER.**
- Use  $\Delta\nabla$  to set the remote ID and press ENTER.**  
"OK" flashes four times on the remote control unit and the normal operation mode is restored.

Remote control unit display	Remote ID
ID-1	1
ID-2	2
ID-3	3
ID-4	4


### NOTE

- When you change the remote ID, make sure that the remote control unit and the remote ID of the main unit are exactly the same. (🔍 p. 272)

## Setting the display time length of the remote control unit display

Use the following procedure to set the length of time for which to display data such as zone and mode on the display panel of the remote control unit.

- The default setting is "05SEC".

- Press and hold RC SETUP for more than 3 seconds.**  
"SETUP" and  indicator flashes twice on the remote control unit.
- Use  $\Delta\nabla$  to display "DISPL" on the remote control unit and press ENTER.**
- Use  $\Delta\nabla$  to set the display time length and press ENTER.**  
"OK" flashes four times on the remote control unit and the normal operation mode is restored.


Remote control unit display	Display time
05SEC	5 sec
10SEC	10 sec
15SEC	15 sec



## Setting the back light

You can set the back light on the remote control unit to off to prolong the life of the dry cell batteries.


- The default setting is "ON".

- 1 Press and hold RC SETUP for more than 3 seconds.**  
"SETUP" and  indicator flashes twice on the remote control unit.
- 2 Use  $\Delta\nabla$  to display "LIGHT" on the remote control unit and press ENTER.**
- 3 Use  $\Delta\nabla$  to set the back light and press ENTER.**

Remote control unit display	Back light
ON	Back light on
OFF	Back light off

## Restoring all settings of the remote control unit to default

All the settings are restored to their defaults.

- 1 Press and hold RC SETUP for more than 3 seconds.**  
"SETUP" and  indicator flashes twice on the remote control unit.
- 2 Use  $\Delta\nabla$  to display "RESET" on the remote control unit and press ENTER.**
- 3 Use  $\Delta\nabla$  to display "ALL" on the remote control unit and press ENTER.**
- 4 Use  $\Delta\nabla$  to display "YES" on the remote control unit and press ENTER.**  
"RESET" flashes four times on the remote control unit and the normal operation mode is restored.



## ■ Contents

### Tips

I want the volume not to become too loud by mistake	292
I want to keep the volume at the same level when I turn the power on	292
I want to have the subwoofer always output audio	292
I want to make human voices in the movies clearer	292
I want to keep bass and clarity during playback at a lower volume level	292
I want to automatically adjust the volume level difference in content such as TV and movies	292
I want to set the optimized listening environment after changing the configuration/position of the speakers or changing a speaker to a new one	293
I want to combine a desired video with the current music	293
I want to skip unused input sources	293
I want to enjoy the same music in all zones at the home party, etc.	293
I want to minimize the delay in video signals when I'm playing a game on my game console	293
I want to operate this unit using the TV remote control	293

### Troubleshooting

Power does not turn on / Power is turned off	295
Operations cannot be performed through the remote control unit	296
Display on this unit shows nothing	296
No sound comes out	297
Desired sound does not come out	298
Sound is interrupted or noise occurs	301
No video is shown on the TV	302
The menu screen is not displayed on the TV	304
The color of the menu screen and operations content displayed on the television is different from normal	304
AirPlay cannot be played back	305
USB memory devices cannot be played back	306
Bluetooth cannot be played back	307
The Internet radio cannot be played back	308
Music files on PC or NAS cannot be played back	309
Various online services cannot be played	310
The HDMI Control function does not work	310
Cannot connect to a wireless LAN network	311
When using HDMI ZONE2, the devices does not function properly	312
Update/upgrade error messages	313



# Tips

---

## I want the volume not to become too loud by mistake

- Set the volume upper limit for “Volume Limit” in the menu beforehand. This prevents children or others from increasing the volume too much by mistake. You can set this for each zone. (“Volume” (🔍 p. 191), “Volume Limit” (🔍 p. 264))

## I want to keep the volume at the same level when I turn the power on

- By default, the volume setting when power was previously set to standby on this unit is applied at next power on with no change. To use a fixed volume level, set the volume level at power on for “Power On Volume” in the menu. You can set this for each zone. (“Volume” (🔍 p. 191), “Power On Volume” (🔍 p. 264))

## I want to have the subwoofer always output audio

- Depending on the input signals and sound mode, the subwoofer may not output audio. When “Subwoofer Mode” in the menu is set to “LFE+Main”, you can have the subwoofer always output audio. (🔍 p. 247)

## I want to make human voices in the movies clearer

- Select a setting that makes the dialog easier to hear in the option menu “Dialog Enhancer”. (🔍 p. 133)

## I want to keep bass and clarity during playback at a lower volume level

- Set “Dynamic EQ” in the menu to “On”. This setting corrects the frequency characteristics to allow you to enjoy clear sound without the bass being lost even during playback at a lower volume level. (🔍 p. 193)

## I want to automatically adjust the volume level difference in content such as TV and movies

- Set “Dynamic Volume” in the menu. Volume level changes (between quiet scenes and loud scenes) in TV shows or movies are automatically adjusted to your desired level. (🔍 p. 194)



**I want to set the optimized listening environment after changing the configuration/position of the speakers or changing a speaker to a new one**

- Perform Audyssey® Setup. This automatically makes the optimized speaker settings for the new listening environment. (🔍 p. 217)

**I want to combine a desired video with the current music**

- Set “Video Select” in the option menu to “On”. You can combine the current music with your desired video source from a Set-top Box or DVD, etc. while listening to music from the CD, Phono, HEOS Music, USB or Bluetooth. (🔍 p. 136)

**I want to skip unused input sources**

- Set unused input sources for “Hide Sources” in the menu. This allows you to skip unused input sources when turning the SOURCE SELECT knob on this unit. (🔍 p. 215)

**I want to enjoy the same music in all zones at the home party, etc.**

- Set “All Zone Stereo” in the option menu to “Start”. You can simultaneously play back music in another room (ZONE2, ZONE3) that is played back in MAIN ZONE. (🔍 p. 138)

**I want to minimize the delay in video signals when I'm playing a game on my game console**

- When the video is delayed against button operations with the controller on the game console, set “Video Mode” in the menu to “Game”. (🔍 p. 205)

**I want to operate this unit using the TV remote control**

- Select “AV Receiver” in a TV menu such as “Input”\* or “Operate Connected HDMI Device”\*. The Smart Menu of this unit is displayed on the TV. This Smart Menu can be operated using the remote control of your TV.

\* The selection method differs depending on your TV. See the owner's manual of your TV for details.




# Troubleshooting

---

If a problem should arise, first check the following:

1. **Are the connections correct?**
2. **Is the set being operated as described in the owner's manual?**
3. **Are the other devices operating properly?**



- If steps 1 to 3 above do not improve the problem, restarting the device may improve the problem.  
Continue pressing the  button on the unit until "Restart" appears in the display, or remove and re-insert the power cord of the unit.

If this unit does not operate properly, check the corresponding symptoms in this section.

If the symptoms do not match any of those described here, consult your dealer as it could be due to a fault in this unit. In this case, disconnect the power immediately and contact the store where you purchased this unit.



## Power does not turn on / Power is turned off

### Power does not turn on.

- Check whether the power plug is correctly inserted into the power outlet. (🔍 p. 99)

### Power automatically turns off.

- The sleep timer is set. Turn on the power again. (🔍 p. 158)
- “Auto Standby” is set. “Auto Standby” is triggered when there is no operation for a set amount of time. To disable “Auto Standby”, set “Auto Standby” on the menu to “Off”. (🔍 p. 262)

### Power turns off and the power indicator flashes in red approx. every 2 seconds.

- The protection circuit has been activated due to a rise in temperature within this unit. Turn the power off, wait about an hour until this unit cools down sufficiently, and then turn the power on again. (🔍 p. 336)
- Please re-install this unit in a place having good ventilation.

### Power turns off and the power indicator flashes in red approx. every 0.5 seconds.

- Check the speaker connections. The protection circuit may have been activated because speaker cable core wires came in contact with each other or a core wire was disconnected from the connector and came in contact with the rear panel of this unit. After unplugging the power cord, take corrective action such as firmly re-twisting the core wire or taking care of the connector, and then reconnect the wire. (🔍 p. 42)
- Turn down the volume and turn on the power again. (🔍 p. 101)
- This unit’s amplifier circuit has failed. Unplug the power cord and contact our customer service center.

### The power to this unit does not turn off when you press the Power operation button. “ZONE2 On” or “ZONE3 On” appears on the display.

- Power in either ZONE2 or ZONE3 is on. To turn off the power of the device (standby), press either the ZONE2 ON/OFF or ZONE3 ON/OFF button on the main unit or press the ZONE SELECT button on the remote control and select a zone before pressing the POWER ⏻ button.

### The power to this unit does not turn off when you press the Power operation button. “HEOS On” appears on the display.

- A HEOS device on the same network is playing an input source from this unit. Stop playback on the HEOS device when turning this unit off (setting it to standby). The power of this unit will turn off automatically after around 20 minutes.



## Operations cannot be performed through the remote control unit

### Operations cannot be performed through the remote control unit.

- Batteries are worn out. Replace with new batteries. (🔍 p. 9)
- Operate the remote control unit within a distance of about 7 m from this unit and at an angle of within 30°. (🔍 p. 9)
- Remove any obstacle between this unit and the remote control unit.
- Insert the batteries in the proper direction, checking the ⊕ and ⊖ marks. (🔍 p. 9)
- The set's remote control sensor is exposed to strong light (direct sunlight, inverter type fluorescent bulb light, etc.). Move the set to a place in which the remote control sensor will not be exposed to strong light.
- The operation target zone does not correspond to the zone setting specified on the remote control unit. Press ZONE SELECT to select the zone to operate. (🔍 p. 179)
- The remote control unit operating mode is used to operate other devices. Press AVR to set the operating mode to AVR. (🔍 p. 278)
- When using a 3D video device, the remote control unit of this unit may not function due to effects of infrared communications between units (such as TV and glasses for 3D viewing). In this case, adjust the direction of units with the 3D communications function and their distance to ensure they do not affect operations from the remote control unit of this unit.

## Display on this unit shows nothing

### Display is off.

- Set "Dimmer" on the menu to something other than "Off". (🔍 p. 266)
- When the sound mode is set to "Pure Direct", the display is off. (🔍 p. 142)





## No sound comes out

### No sound comes out of speakers.

- Check the connections for all devices. (👉 p. 42)
- Insert connection cables all the way in.
- Check that input connectors and output connectors are not reversely connected.
- Check cables for damage.
- Check that speaker cables are properly connected. Check that cable core wires come in contact with the metal part on speaker terminals. (👉 p. 42)
- Securely tighten the speaker terminals. Check speaker terminals for looseness. (👉 p. 42)
- Check that a proper input source is selected. (👉 p. 101)
- Adjust the volume. (👉 p. 102)
- Cancel the mute mode. (👉 p. 102)
- Check the digital audio input connector setting. (👉 p. 212)
- Check the digital audio output setting on the connected device. On some devices, the digital audio output is set to off by default.
- When a headphone is plugged into the PHONES jack on the main unit, sound is not output from the speaker terminal and PRE OUT connector.

### No sound comes out when using the DVI-D connection.

- When this unit is connected to a device equipped with a DVI-D connector, no sound is output. Make a separate audio connection.

### No sound comes out of a TV that is connected via HDMI.

- Audio signals input to 7.1CH IN connectors on this unit cannot be output to the TV.

### No sound comes out when selecting Tuner input.

- This unit does not have built-in FM/AM tuner. Connect an external tuner to the TUNER inputs.



## Desired sound does not come out

### The volume does not increase.

- The maximum volume is set too low. Set the maximum volume using “Limit” on the menu. (🔍 p. 191)
- Appropriate volume correction processing is performed according to the input audio format and settings, so the volume may not reach the upper limit.

### No sound comes out with the HDMI connection.

- Check the connection of the HDMI connectors. (🔍 p. 83)
- When outputting HDMI audio from the speakers, set “HDMI Audio Out” on the menu to “AVR”. To output from the TV, set “TV”. (🔍 p. 199)
- When using the HDMI Control function, check that the audio output is set to the AV amplifier on the TV. (🔍 p. 155)

### When an eARC function-compatible television is connected, television audio is not output from the speaker connected to this unit

- eARC function settings may be required depending on the eARC function-compatible television you are using. Make sure eARC is set to on if this setting exists on your television. For more information, check your television’s owner’s manual.
- Make sure the input source of this unit is “TV Audio”.
- The eARC function does not operate when the HDMI input connector is set to the “TV Audio” input source. To enable eARC function operation, remove the HDMI input connector setting, then restart this unit and the television. (🔍 p. 213)

### No sound comes out of a specific speaker.

- Check that speaker cables are properly connected.
- Check that a selection other than “None” is set for the “Speaker Config.” setting in menu. (🔍 p. 238)
- Check the “Assign Mode” setting in the menu. (🔍 p. 228)
- When the sound mode is “Stereo” and “Virtual”, audio is only output from the front speakers and subwoofer.
- Audio is not output from the surround back speaker if “Speaker Virtualizer” is set to “On” when “Speaker Config.” - “Surr. Back” is set to “1 spkr” in the menu. (🔍 p. 183)
- Audio is not output from the front wide speaker if “Speaker Virtualizer” is set to “On”. (🔍 p. 183)
- When “Speaker Config.” - “Surr. Back” is set to “2 spkrs”, “Speaker Config.” - “Center” is set to “Large” or “Small”, and sound mode is set to “IMAX DTS”, surround audio is output from the surround back speaker. Audio is not output from the surround speaker. (🔍 p. 239)



**No sound is produced from subwoofer.**

- Check the subwoofer connections.
- Turn on the subwoofer's power.
- Set "Speaker Config." - "Subwoofer" in the menu to "1 spkr" or "2 spkrs". (👉 p. 238)
- When "Speaker Config." - "Front" in the menu is set to "Large", depending on the input signal and the sound mode, no sound may be output from the subwoofer. (👉 p. 238)
- When no subwoofer audio signal (LFE) is included in the input signals, no sound may be output from the subwoofer. (👉 p. 247)
- You can make the subwoofer always output sound by setting the "Subwoofer Mode" to "LFE+Main". (👉 p. 247)

**DTS sound is not output.**

- Check that the digital audio output setting on the connected device is set to "DTS".

**Dolby Atmos, Dolby TrueHD, DTS-HD, Dolby Digital Plus audio is not output.**

- Make HDMI connections. (👉 p. 87)
- Check the digital audio output setting on the connected device. On some devices, "PCM" is set by default.

**DTS Neural:X mode cannot be selected.**

- DTS Neural:X cannot be selected when using the headphones.

**Dolby Surround mode cannot be selected.**

- Dolby Surround cannot be selected when using the headphones.

**IMAX DTS:X cannot be selected.**

- IMAX DTS:X and IMAX DTS cannot be selected but DTS:X and DTS can be selected, when the headphones are used.

**Sound modes other than "Stereo" or "Direct" cannot be selected.**

- Only "Stereo" or "Direct" can be selected for the sound mode if Headphone:X signals are input.



**Audyssey MultEQ® XT32, Audyssey Dynamic EQ®, Audyssey Dynamic Volume® and Audyssey LFC™ cannot be selected.**

- These cannot be selected when you have not performed Audyssey® Setup. (🔧 p. 217)
- Switch to a sound mode other than “Direct” or “Pure Direct”. (🔧 p. 141)
- Audyssey Dynamic EQ®, Audyssey Dynamic Volume® and Audyssey LFC™ cannot be selected when sound mode is “DTS Virtual:X” or sound mode that have “+ Virtual:X” in the sound mode name.
- These cannot be selected when using the headphones.

**“Restorer” cannot be selected.**

- Check that an analog signal or PCM signal (Sample Rate = 44.1/48 kHz) is input. For playback of multichannel signals such as Dolby Digital or DTS surround, “Restorer” cannot be used. (🔧 p. 189)
- Switch to a sound mode other than “Direct” or “Pure Direct”. (🔧 p. 141)

**No audio is output from PRE OUT or speakers for ZONE2/ZONE3.**

- In ZONE2/ZONE3, the audio can be played back when signals input from digital connectors (OPTICAL/COAXIAL) are in 2ch PCM format.
- In ZONE2, the audio can be played back when signals input from the HDMI connector are in 2ch PCM format. To play back the audio in ZONE2 irrespective of the input signal format, set “HDMI Audio” in the menu to “PCM”. Depending on the played back device, the audio may not be played back even with this setting. In that case, set the audio format to “PCM (2ch)” on the played back device. (🔧 p. 264)
- When listening to audio from a Bluetooth device in ZONE2/ZONE3, remove any obstructions between the Bluetooth device and this unit and use it within a range of about 30 m.



## Sound is interrupted or noise occurs

### During playback from the Internet radio or USB memory device, sound is occasionally interrupted.

- When the transfer speed of the USB memory device is slow, sound may occasionally be interrupted.
- The network communication speed is slow or the radio station is busy.

### When making a call on iPhone, noise occurs in audio output on this unit.

- When making a call, keep a distance of 20 cm or longer between iPhone and this unit.

### The sounds appear to be distorted.

- Lower the volume. (👉 p. 102)
- Set "Off" to the "ECO Mode". When "On" or "Auto" is in the "ECO Mode", the audio may be distorted when the playback volume is high. (👉 p. 259)

### Sound cuts out when using Wi-Fi connection.

- The frequency band used by the wireless LAN is also used by microwave ovens, cordless telephones, wireless game controllers and other wireless LAN devices. Using such devices at the same time as this unit may cause sound to cut out due to electronic interference. Sound cut out can be improved using the following methods. (👉 p. 95)
  - Install devices that cause interference away from this unit.
  - Turn off the power supply to devices that cause interference.
  - Change the settings of the router channel to which this unit is connected to. (See the instruction manual of the wireless router for details on how to change the channel.)
  - Switch to a wired LAN connection.
- Particularly when you play back large music files, depending on your wireless LAN environment, the playback sound may be interrupted. In this case, make the wired LAN connection. (👉 p. 252)



## No video is shown on the TV

### No picture appears.

- Check the connections for all devices. (👉 p. 83)
- Insert connection cables all the way in.
- Check that input connectors and output connectors are not reversely connected.
- Check cables for damage.
- Match the input settings to the input connector of the TV connected to this unit. (👉 p. 212)
- Check that the proper input source is selected. (👉 p. 101)
- Check the video input connector setting. (👉 p. 212)
- Check that the resolution of the player corresponds to that of the TV. (👉 p. 270)
- Check whether the TV is compatible with copyright protection (HDCP). If connected to a device not compatible with HDCP, video will not be output correctly. (👉 p. 320)
- To enjoy content that is copyright protected by HDCP 2.2 or HDCP 2.3, use a playback device and TV compatible with HDCP 2.2 or HDCP 2.3.
- The HDMI signal cannot be converted to an analog signal. Use analog connections. (👉 p. 321)
- To play back a 4K video, use a “High Speed HDMI Cable” or an “High Speed HDMI Cable with Ethernet”. In order to achieve a higher fidelity for 4K videos, it is recommended to use a “Premium High Speed HDMI Cables” or an “Premium High Speed HDMI Cables with Ethernet” that has an HDMI Premium Certified Cable label on the product package.
- Use an “Ultra High Speed 48 Gbps HDMI cable” to enjoy 8K or 4K 120Hz video.

### No video is shown on the TV with the DVI-D connection.

- With the DVI-D connection, on some device combinations, devices may not function properly due to the copy guard copyright protection (HDCP). (👉 p. 320)



**No video from an input source such as a game console is shown on the TV.**

- When special video signals are input from a game console, etc., the Video Conversion function may not function. Connect the input connector to the monitor output connector of the same type.

**While the menu is being displayed, no video is shown on the TV.**

- The video being played will not appear in the background of the menu when the menu is operated during playback of the following video signals.
  - Some images of 3D video contents
  - Computer resolution images (example: VGA)
  - Video with an aspect ratio other than 16:9 or 4:3
  - 4K or 8K video
  - Some kind of HDR signals
  - Some kind of game contents
  - Compressed video

**When using HDMI ZONE2, the video output in MAIN ZONE is interrupted.**

- When ZONE2 is operated with the same input source selected for MAIN ZONE and ZONE2, video in MAIN ZONE may be interrupted.



## The menu screen is not displayed on the TV

### The menu screen or status information screen is not displayed on the TV.

- The menu screen is only displayed on this unit and a TV connected with an HDMI cable. If this unit is connected to a TV using a different video output connector, operate while watching the display on this unit.
- The status information will not appear on the TV when the following video signals are being played.
  - Some images of 3D video content
  - Computer resolution images (example: VGA)
  - Video with an aspect ratio other than 16:9 or 4:3
  - Some kind of HDR signals
  - Some kind of game contents
  - Compressed video
- When a 2D video is converted to a 3D video on the TV, the menu screen or status information screen is not displayed properly. (🔍 p. 271)
- In the pure direct playback mode, the menu screen or status information is not displayed. Switch to a sound mode other than the pure direct mode. (🔍 p. 140)
- Set the “TV Format” setting in the menu to a selection that is appropriate for the TV. (🔍 p. 211)

## The color of the menu screen and operations content displayed on the television is different from normal

### The color of the menu screen and operations content displayed on the television is different.

- Performing operations on this unit during playback of a Dolby Vision signal may cause variance in the color display of the menu screen and operations content. This is a characteristic of the Dolby Vision signal and is not a malfunction.





## AirPlay cannot be played back

### The AirPlay icon is not displayed on iTunes / iPhone / iPod touch / iPad.

- This unit and PC / iPhone / iPod touch / iPad are not connected to the same network (LAN). Connect it to the same LAN as this unit. (👉 p. 95)
- The firmware on iTunes / iPhone / iPod touch / iPad is not compatible with AirPlay. Update the firmware to the latest version.

### Audio is not output.

- The volume on iTunes / iPhone / iPod touch / iPad is set to the minimum level. The volume on iTunes / iPhone / iPod touch / iPad is linked with the volume on this unit. Set a proper volume level.
- The AirPlay playback is not performed, or this unit is not selected. Click the AirPlay icon on the iTunes / iPhone / iPod touch / iPad screen and select this unit. (👉 p. 128)

### Audio is interrupted during the AirPlay playback on iPhone / iPod touch / iPad.

- Quit the application running in the background of the iPhone/iPod touch/iPad, and then play using AirPlay.
- Some external factors may be affecting the wireless connection. Modify the network environment by taking measures such as shortening the distance from the wireless LAN access point.

### iTunes cannot be played back through the remote control unit.

- Enable the “Allow iTunes audio control from remote speakers” setting on iTunes. Then, you can perform playback, pause, and skip operations through the remote control unit.



## USB memory devices cannot be played back

### USB memory device is not recognized.

- Disconnect and reconnect the USB memory device. (👉 p. 94)
- Mass storage class compatible USB memory devices are supported.
- This unit does not support a connection through a USB hub. Connect the USB memory device directly to the USB port.
- The USB memory device must be formatted to “FAT32” or “NTFS”.
- Not all USB memory devices are guaranteed to work. Some USB memory devices are not recognized. When using a type of portable hard disc drive compatible with the USB connection that requires power from an AC adapter, use the AC adapter that came with the drive.

### Files on the USB memory device are not displayed.

- Files of a type not supported by this unit are not displayed. (👉 p. 103)
- This unit is able to display files in a maximum of eight folder layers. A maximum of 5000 files (folders) can also be displayed for each layer. Modify the folder structure of the USB memory device.
- When multiple partitions exist on the USB memory device, only files on the first partition are displayed.

### iOS and Android devices are not recognized.

- The USB port of this unit does not support playback from iOS and Android devices.

### Files on a USB memory device cannot be played.

- Files are created in a format that is not supported by this unit. Check the formats supported by this unit. (👉 p. 323)
- You are attempting to play a file that is copyright protected. Files that are copyright protected cannot be played on this unit.
- Playback may not be possible if the album art file size exceeds 2 MB.



## Bluetooth cannot be played back

### **Bluetooth devices cannot be connected to this unit.**

- The Bluetooth function in the Bluetooth device has not been enabled. See the Owner's Manual of the Bluetooth device to enable the Bluetooth function.
- Bring the Bluetooth device near to this unit.
- The Bluetooth device cannot connect with this unit if it is not compatible with the A2DP profile.
- Turn the power of the Bluetooth device off and on again, and then try again.

### **The sound is cut off.**

- Bring the Bluetooth device near to this unit.
- Remove obstructions between the Bluetooth device and this unit.
- To prevent electromagnetic interference, locate this unit away from microwave ovens, wireless LAN devices and other Bluetooth devices.
- Reconnect the Bluetooth device.



## The Internet radio cannot be played back

### A list of broadcasting stations is not displayed.

- The LAN cable is not properly connected, or the network is disconnected. Check the connection status. (👉 p. 95)
- Perform the network diagnostic mode.

### Internet Radio cannot be played.

- The selected radio station is broadcasting in a format that is not supported by this unit. Formats that can be played back in this unit are MP3, WMA and AAC. (👉 p. 326)
- The firewall function is enabled on the router. Check the firewall setting.
- The IP address is not properly set. (👉 p. 254)
- Check the power of the router is on.
- To obtain the IP address automatically, enable the DHCP server function on the router. Also, set the DHCP setting to “On” on this unit. (👉 p. 254)
- To obtain the IP address manually, set the IP address on this unit. (👉 p. 254)
- Some radio stations broadcast silently during some time period. In this case, no audio is output. Wait for a while and select the same radio station, or select another radio station. (👉 p. 113)
- The selected radio station is not in service. Select a radio station in service.

### Cannot connect to favorite radio stations.

- Radio station is not currently in service. Register radio stations in service.



## Music files on PC or NAS cannot be played back

### Files stored on a computer cannot be played.

- Files are stored in a non-compatible format. Record in a compatible format. (🔍 p. 325)
- Files that are copyright protected cannot be played on this unit.
- The USB port of this unit cannot be used for connection to a computer.
- Media sharing settings on the server or NAS do not allow this unit. Change the settings to allow this unit. For details, see the owner's manual of the server or NAS.

### Server is not found, or it is not possible to connect to the server.

- The computer's or router's firewall is activated. Check the computer's or router's firewall settings.
- Computer's power is not turned on. Turn on the power.
- Server is not running. Launch the server.
- IP address of this unit is wrong. Check the IP address of this unit. (🔍 p. 251)

### Music files on PC cannot be played back.

- Even if PC is connected to the USB port on this unit, music files on it cannot be played back. Connect PC to this unit through the network. (🔍 p. 95)

### Files on PC or NAS are not displayed.

- Files of a type not supported by this unit are not displayed. (🔍 p. 325)

### Music stored on a NAS cannot be played.

- If you use a NAS in conformity with the DLNA standard, enable the DLNA server function in the NAS setting.
- If you use a NAS that does not conform with the DLNA standard, play the music via a PC. Set Windows Media Player's media sharing function and add NAS to the selected play folder.
- If connection is restricted, set audio equipment as the connection target.



## Various online services cannot be played

### Various online services cannot be played.

- The online service may have been discontinued.

## The HDMI Control function does not work

### The HDMI Control function does not work.

- Check that "HDMI Control" in the menu is set to "On". (👉 p. 201)
- You cannot operate devices that are not compatible with the HDMI Control function. In addition, depending on the connected device or the settings, the HDMI Control function may not work. In this case, operate the external device directly. (👉 p. 155)
- Check that the HDMI Control function setting is enabled on all devices connected to this unit. (👉 p. 155)
- When you make connection related changes such as connecting an additional HDMI device, the link operation settings may be initialized. Turn off this unit and devices connected via HDMI, and turn them on again. (👉 p. 155)
- The HDMI MONITOR 2 connector is not compatible with the HDMI Control function. Use the HDMI MONITOR 1 connector to connect to the TV. (👉 p. 83)



## Cannot connect to a wireless LAN network

### Cannot connect to the network.

- The network name (SSID), password and encryption setting have not been set up correctly. Configure the network settings according to the setting details of this unit. (🔍 p. 253)
- Shorten the distance from the wireless LAN access point and remove any obstructions to improve access first before re-connecting again. Place the unit away from microwave ovens and other network access points.
- Configure the access point channel settings away from channels that are being used by other networks.
- This unit is not compatible with WEP (TSN).

### Cannot connect to a WPS Router.

- Check that the WPS mode of the router is operating.
- Press the WPS button on the router and then press the “Connect” button displayed on the TV within 2 minutes.
- A router/settings that are compatible with WPS 2.0 standards are required. Set the encryption time to “None”, “WPA-PSK (AES)” or WPA2-PSK (AES). (🔍 p. 253)
- If the router encryption method is WEP/WPA-TKIP/WPA2-TKIP, you cannot connect by using the WPS button on the router. In this case, use the “Scan Networks” or “Manual” method to connect.

### Cannot connect to the network using iPhone/iPod touch/iPad.

- Update the iPhone/iPod touch/iPad firmware to the latest version.
- When configuring the settings via a wireless connection, iOS 7 or later needs to be supported.



## When using HDMI ZONE2, the devices does not function properly

### When using MAIN ZONE, video output is interrupted in HDMI ZONE2.

- With the same input source selected for MAIN ZONE and ZONE2, when you operate MAIN ZONE, video may be interrupted in HDMI ZONE2.

### When using HDMI ZONE2, no video or audio is output from the TV in ZONE2.

- Check that the power is on for ZONE2. (👉 p. 173)
- Check the input source for ZONE2. (👉 p. 173)
- The AUX1-HDMI and HDMI 7 connector does not support the HDMI ZONE2 function.
- In ZONE2, playback is only possible when the input signals are HDMI signals.
- When the TV does not support the input audio format, audio is not output. Set the audio format to “PCM” on the playback device. Alternatively, set “ZONE2 Setup” - “HDMI Audio” in the menu to “PCM”. (👉 p. 264)
- When the TV is not compatible with the resolution of the input video, no video is output. Set the output resolution on the playback device to a resolution that is compatible with the TV.

### When using HDMI ZONE2, MAIN ZONE audio is played back as PCM.


- When the same input source is selected for MAIN ZONE and ZONE2, the audio format is limited according to the specifications of the TV in ZONE2.





## Update/upgrade error messages

If an update/upgrade is interrupted or fails, an error message appears.

Display	Description
<b>Connection failed. Please check your network, then try again.</b>	The network connection is unstable. Connection to the server failed. Check your network environment and try the update again.
<b>Update failed. Please check your network, then try again.</b>	The download of the firmware failed. Check your network environment and try the update again.
<b>Upgrade failed. Please check your network, then try again.</b>	The download of the firmware failed. Check your network environment and try the upgrade again.
<b>Please check your network, unplug and reconnect the power cord, and try again.</b>	The update failed. Press and hold the  on the main unit for more than 5 seconds, or remove and re-insert the power cord. The update restarts automatically.
<b>Please contact customer service in your area.</b>	This unit may be broken. Contact our Customer Service Center in your area.

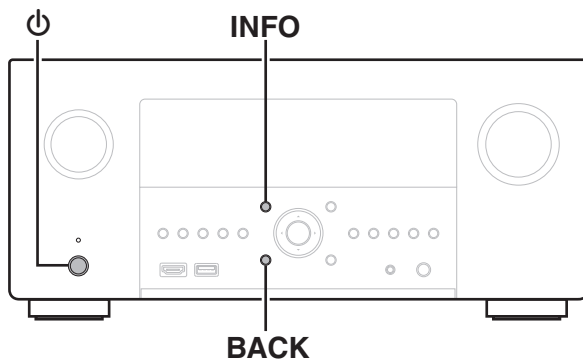


## Resetting factory settings

If the indicators are incorrect or the unit cannot be operated, restarting the unit may improve the problem. We recommend restarting the unit before returning the settings to the default settings. (👉 p. 294)

If the operations are not improved by restarting the unit, follow the steps below.

Various settings are reset to the factory default values. Make settings again.



- 1** Turn off the power using ⏻.
- 2** Press ⏻ while simultaneously pressing INFO and BACK.
- 3** Remove your fingers from the two buttons when “Initialized” appears on the display.



- Before returning the settings to the default settings, use the “Save & Load” function from the menu to save and restore the details of various settings configured on the unit. (👉 p. 273)



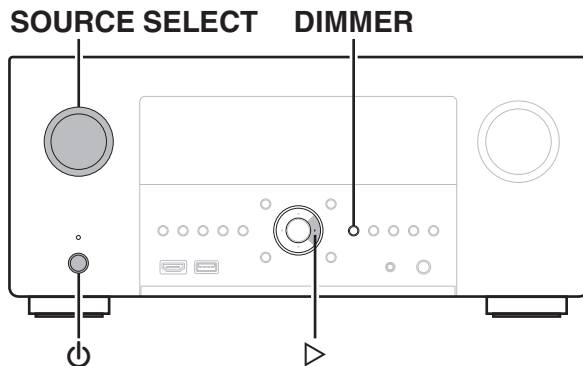
## Resetting network settings



If network contents cannot be played or the unit cannot connect to the network, restarting the unit may improve the problem. We recommend restarting the unit before returning the settings to the default settings. (🔧 p. 294)

If the operations are not improved by restarting the unit, follow the steps below.

Network settings are reset to the factory default values. Make settings again.

However, the menu “Amp Assign”, “Speaker Config.” and “Video” settings are not reset.



- 1 Press  to turn on power to the unit.
- 2 Turn SOURCE SELECT to select “HEOS Music”.
- 3 Press and hold the main unit’s DIMMER and  at the same time for at least 3 seconds.
- 4 Remove your fingers from the two buttons when “Network Reset...” appears on the display.
- 5 “Completed” is shown in the display when reset is complete.



- Before returning the settings to the default settings, use the “Save & Load” function from the menu to save and restore the details of various settings configured on the unit. (🔧 p. 273)

### NOTE

- Do not turn the power off until reset is complete.

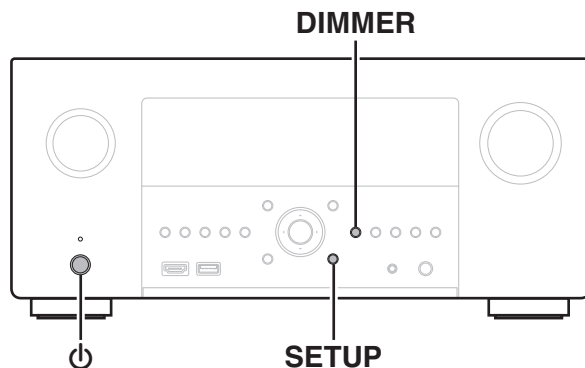


## Restoring the firmware to the factory defaults

When the unit or the network functions do not work properly, operation may be improved by restoring the firmware to the factory defaults.

Do this when the unit still does not work properly even after trying the steps for “Resetting factory settings” or “Resetting network settings”. (☞ p. 314, 315)

After the firmware is restored, various settings are reset to the default settings. Configure the settings and update the firmware again.



**1** Press **⏻** while simultaneously pressing **SETUP** and **DIMMER**.

**2** When “Restoring FW...” appears on the display, release the buttons.

When the firmware restore is complete, “Completed” appears on the display for about 5 seconds, and the unit automatically restarts.



- This operation takes time because it requires reconnecting to the network, restoring and updating the firmware.
- If this operation does not improve the problem, contact our customer service center.

### NOTE

- Do not turn off the power until the firmware restore is complete.



## About HDMI

HDMI is an abbreviation of High-Definition Multimedia Interface, which is an AV digital interface that can be connected to a TV or amplifier.

With the HDMI connection, high definition video and high quality audio formats adopted by Blu-ray Disc players (Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby TrueHD, DTS-HD, DTS-HD Master Audio) can be transmitted, which is not possible with the analog video transmission.

Furthermore, in the HDMI connection, audio and video signals can be transmitted through a single HDMI cable, while in conventional connections it is necessary to provide audio and video cables separately for connection between devices. This allows you to simplify the wiring configuration that tends to be quite complex in a home theater system.

This unit supports the following HDMI functions.

- **Deep Color**

An imaging technology supported by HDMI. Unlike RGB or YCbCr, which uses 8 bits (256 shades) per color, it can use 10 bits (1024 shades), 12 bits (4096 shades), or 16 bits (65536 shades) to produce colors in higher definition.

Both devices linked via HDMI must support Deep Color.

- **x.v.Color**

This function lets HDTVs display colors more accurately. It enables display with natural, vivid colors.

“x.v.Color” is trademark of Sony Corporation.

- **3D**

This unit supports input and output of 3D (3 dimensional) video signals of HDMI. To play back 3D video, you need a TV and player that provide support for the HDMI 3D function and a pair of 3D glasses.

- **4K / 8K**

This unit supports input and output of 4K (3840 x 2160 pixels) and 8K (7680 x 4320 pixels) video signals of HDMI.

- **Content Type**

It automatically makes settings suitable for the video output type (content information).

- **Adobe RGB color, Adobe YCC601 color**

The color space defined by Adobe Systems Inc. Because it is a wider color space than RGB, it can produce more vivid and natural images.

- **sYCC601 color**

Each of these color spaces defines a palette of available colors that is larger than the traditional RGB color model.



- **Auto Lip Sync**

This function can automatically correct delay between the audio and video.

Use a TV that is compatible with the Auto Lip Sync function.

- **HDMI Pass Through**

Even when the power to this unit is set to standby, signals input from the HDMI input connector are output to a TV or other device that is connected to the HDMI output connector.

- **HDMI Control**

If you connect the unit and an HDMI Control function compatible TV or player with an HDMI cable and then enable the HDMI Control function setting on each device, the devices will be able to control each other.

- **Power off link**

This unit power off can be linked to the TV power off step.

- **Audio output destination switching**

From the TV, you can switch whether to output audio from the TV or the AV amplifier.

- **Volume adjustment**

You can adjust this unit's volume in the TV volume adjustment operation.

- **Input source switching**

You can switch this unit input sources through linkage to TV input switching.

When playing the player, this unit input source switches to the source for that player.

- **ARC (Audio Return Channel)**

This function transmits audio signals from the TV to this unit through the HDMI cable and plays back the audio from the TV on this unit based on the HDMI Control function.

If a TV without the ARC function is connected via HDMI connections, video signals of the playback device connected to this unit are transmitted to the TV, but this unit can not play back the audio from the TV. If you want to enjoy surround audio for TV program, a separate audio cable connection is required.

In contrast, if a TV with the ARC function is connected via HDMI connections, no audio cable connection is required. Audio signals from the TV can be input to this unit through the HDMI cable between this unit and the TV. This function allows you to enjoy surround playback on this unit for the TV.

- **eARC (Enhanced Audio Return Channel)**

The eARC function is an extension of the conventional ARC function. It utilizes dedicated eARC function control to play back television audio from this unit without passing through HDMI control. Furthermore, the eARC function can transmit multichannel linear PCM, Dolby TrueHD, Dolby Atmos, DTS-HD Master Audio, DTS:X and other audio formats not compatible with conventional ARC. Connecting to an eARC function-compatible television also enables enjoyment of higher-quality surround playback of the audio content played from your television.



- **ALLM (Auto Low Latency Mode)**

This unit automatically switches to low latency mode depending on playback contents when using a combination of television and game console compatible with the ALLM function.

- **VRR (Variable Refresh Rate):**

VRR reduces or eliminates lag, stutter and frame tearing for more fluid and better detailed gameplay.

- **QMS (Quick Media Switching):**

QMS for movies and video eliminates the delay that can result in blank screens before content is displayed.

- **QFT (Quick Frame Transport):**

QFT reduces latency for smoother no-lag gaming, and real-time interactive virtual reality.

- **FRL (Fixed Rate Link):**

FRL (Fixed Rate Link) is transmission technology that is required to provide higher resolutions such as ultra high speed bandwidths of 4K/60Hz or higher.

## ■ Supported audio formats

2-channel Linear PCM	2-channel, 32 kHz – 192 kHz, 16/20/24 bit
Multi-channel Linear PCM	7.1-channel, 32 kHz – 192 kHz, 16/20/24 bit
Bitstream	Dolby Digital / DTS / Dolby Atmos / Dolby TrueHD / Dolby Digital Plus / DTS:X / DTS-HD Master Audio / DTS-HD High Resolution Audio / DTS Express
DSD	2-channel – 5.1-channel, 2.8 MHz

## ■ Supported video signals

- 480i
- 576i
- 720p 60/50Hz
- 1080p 60/50/24Hz
- 8K 60/50/30/25/24 Hz
- 480p
- 576p
- 1080i 60/50Hz
- 4K 120/100/60/50/30/25/24 Hz



### Copyright protection system

In order to play back digital video and audio such as BD video or DVD video via HDMI connection, both this unit and the TV or player must to support the copyright protection system known as HDCP (High-bandwidth Digital Content Protection System). HDCP is copyright protection technology comprised of data encryption and authentication of the connected AV devices. This unit supports HDCP.

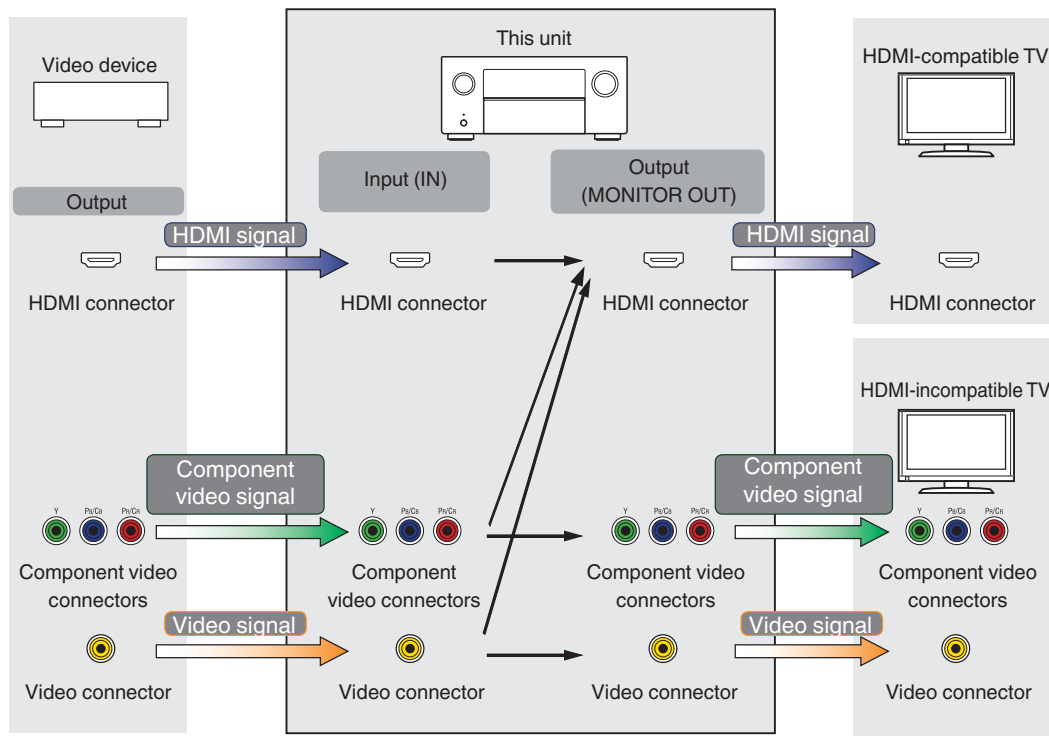
- If a device that does not support HDCP is connected, video and audio are not output correctly. Read the owner's manual of your television or player for more information.





## Video conversion function

This unit automatically converts the input video signals as shown in the diagram before outputting them to the TV.



- The MAIN ZONE Video Conversion function is compatible with the following formats: NTSC, PAL, SECAM, NTSC4.43, PAL-N, PAL-M and PAL-60.



This unit can convert the input video signals to the resolution that is set for “Resolution” in the menu before outputting them to the TV. (🔍 p. 206)

Input signal \ Output signal		HDMI										
		480i/576i	480p/576p	720p	1080i	1080p 30/25/24Hz	1080p 60/50Hz	4K 30/25/24Hz	4K 60/50Hz	4K 120/100Hz	8K 30/25/24Hz	8K 60/50Hz
HDMI	480i/576i	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓		✓			✓
	480p/576p		✓	✓	✓		✓		✓			✓
	720p			✓	✓		✓		✓			✓
	1080i			✓	✓		✓		✓			✓
	1080p 30/25/24Hz					✓		✓			✓	
	1080p 60/50Hz						✓		✓			✓
	4K 30/25/24Hz							✓			✓	
	4K 60/50Hz								✓*1			✓
	4K 120/100Hz									✓*2		
	8K 30/25/24Hz										✓*2	
8K 60/50Hz											✓*2	
Component video	480i/576i	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓		✓			✓
	480p/576p		✓	✓	✓		✓		✓			✓
	720p			✓	✓		✓		✓			✓
	1080i			✓	✓		✓		✓			✓
	1080p						✓		✓			✓
Video	480i/576i	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓		✓			✓

\*1 The HDMI connector on the front panel supports YCbCr 4:2:0 format only.

\*2 Only supported by the HDMI 7 connector.



## Playing back a USB memory devices

- This unit is compatible with MP3 ID3-Tag (Ver. 2) standard.
- This unit can show the artwork that was embedded by using MP3 ID3-Tag Ver. 2.3 or 2.4.
- This unit is compatible with WMA META tags.
- If the image size (pixels) of an album artwork exceeds 500 × 500 (WMA/MP3/Apple Lossless/DSD) or 349 × 349 (MPEG-4 AAC), then music may not be played back properly.

### Compatible formats

	Sampling frequency	Channel	Bit rate	Extension
WMA*1	32/44.1/48 kHz	2-channel	48 – 192 kbps	.wma
MP3	32/44.1/48 kHz	2-channel	32 – 320 kbps	.mp3
WAV	32/44.1/48/88.2/ 96/176.4/192 kHz	2-channel	–	.wav
MPEG-4 AAC*1	32/44.1/48 kHz	2-channel	48 - 320 kbps	.aac/.m4a
FLAC	44.1/48/88.2/ 96/176.4/192 kHz	2-channel	–	.flac
Apple Lossless*2	44.1/48/88.2/ 96/176.4/192 kHz	2-channel	–	.m4a
DSD	2.8/5.6 MHz	2-channel	–	.dsf/.dff

\*1 Only files that are not protected by copyright can be played on this unit.

Content downloaded from pay sites on the Internet are copyright protected. Also, files encoded in WMA format when ripped from a CD, etc. on a computer may be copyright protected, depending on the computer's settings.

\*2 The Apple Lossless Audio Codec (ALAC) decoder is distributed under the Apache License, Version 2.0 (<http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0>).



## ■ Maximum number of playable files and folder

The limits on the number of folders and files that can be displayed by this unit are as follows.

Item	Media	USB memory device
Number of folder directory levels *1		8 levels
Number of folders		500
Number of files*2		5000

\*1 The limited number includes the root folder.

\*2 The allowable number of files may differ according to the USB memory device capacity and the file size.

## Playing back a Bluetooth device

This unit supports the following Bluetooth profile.

- A2DP (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile):  
When a Bluetooth device that supports this standard is connected, monaural and stereo sound data can be streamed at a high quality.
- AVRCP (Audio/Video Remote Control Profile):  
When a Bluetooth device that supports this standard is connected, the Bluetooth device can be operated from this unit.

## ■ About Bluetooth communications

Radio waves broadcast from this unit may interfere with the operation of medical devices. Make sure you turn off the power of this unit and Bluetooth device in the following locations as radio wave interference may cause malfunctions.

- Hospitals, trains, aircraft, petrol kiosks and places where flammable gases are generated
- Near automatic doors and fire alarms



## Playing back a file saved on a PC or NAS

- This unit is compatible with MP3 ID3-Tag (Ver. 2) standard.
- This unit can show the artwork that was embedded by using MP3 ID3-Tag Ver. 2.3 or 2.4.
- This unit is compatible with WMA META tags.
- If the image size (pixels) of an album artwork exceeds 500 × 500 (WMA/MP3/WAV/FLAC/Apple Lossless/DSD) or 349 × 349 (MPEG-4 AAC), then music may not be played back properly.
- A server or server software compatible with distribution in the corresponding formats is required to play music files via a network.  
For playing mentioned audio formats via a network a server software, for example Twonky Media Server or jRiver Media Server, needs to be installed on your computer or NAS for full support. There are other server software available too. Please check supported formats.

### ■ Specifications of supported files

	Sampling frequency	Channel	Bit rate	Extension
WMA*1	32/44.1/48 kHz	2-channel	48 – 192 kbps	.wma
MP3	32/44.1/48 kHz	2-channel	32 – 320 kbps	.mp3
WAV	32/44.1/48/88.2/ 96/176.4/192 kHz	2-channel	–	.wav
MPEG-4 AAC*1	32/44.1/48 kHz	2-channel	48 - 320 kbps	.aac/.m4a
FLAC	44.1/48/88.2/ 96/176.4/192 kHz	2-channel	–	.flac
Apple Lossless*2	44.1/48/88.2/ 96/176.4/192 kHz	2-channel	–	.m4a
DSD	2.8/5.6 MHz	2-channel	–	.dsf/.dff

\*1 Only files that are not protected by copyright can be played on this unit.

Content downloaded from pay sites on the Internet are copyright protected. Also, files encoded in WMA format when ripped from a CD, etc. on a computer may be copyright protected, depending on the computer's settings.

\*2 The Apple Lossless Audio Codec (ALAC) decoder is distributed under the Apache License, Version 2.0 (<http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0>).



## Playing back Internet Radio

### ■ Playable broadcast station specifications

	Sampling frequency	Bit rate	Extension
WMA	32/44.1/48 kHz	48 – 192 kbps	.wma
MP3	32/44.1/48 kHz	32 – 320 kbps	.mp3
MPEG-4 AAC	32/44.1/48 kHz	48 - 320 kbps	.aac/ .m4a

## Personal memory plus function

The most recently used settings (input mode, HDMI output mode, sound mode, tone control, channel level, MultEQ® XT32, Dynamic EQ, Dynamic Volume, Restorer and audio delay, etc.) are saved for each input source.



- “Surround Parameter” settings are stored for each sound mode.

## Last function memory

This function stores the settings which were made before going into the standby mode.



## Explanation of terms

---

### ■ Audyssey

#### **Audyssey Dynamic EQ®**

Audyssey Dynamic EQ® solves the problem of deteriorating sound quality as volume is decreased by taking into account human perception and room acoustics.

Audyssey Dynamic EQ® works in tandem with Audyssey MultEQ® XT32 to provide well-balanced sound for every listener at any volume level.

#### **Audyssey Dynamic Volume®**

Dynamic Volume solves the problem of large variations in volume level between television programs, commercials, and between the soft and loud passages of movies. Audyssey Dynamic EQ® is integrated into Dynamic Volume so that as the playback volume is adjusted automatically, the perceived bass response, tonal balance, surround impression, and dialog clarity remain the same.

#### **Audyssey LFC™ (Low Frequency Containment)**

Audyssey LFC™ solves the problem of low frequency sounds disturbing people in neighboring rooms or apartments. Audyssey LFC™ dynamically monitors the audio content and removes the low frequencies that pass through walls, floors and ceilings. It then applies psychoacoustic processing to restore the perception of low bass for listeners in the room. The result is great sound that no longer disturbs the neighbors.

#### **Audyssey MultEQ® XT32**

Audyssey MultEQ® XT32 is a room equalization solution that calibrates any audio system so that it can achieve optimum performance for every listener in a large listening area. Based on several room measurements, MultEQ® XT32 calculates an equalization solution that corrects for both time and frequency response problems in the listening area and also performs a fully automated surround system setup.



## ■ Auro-3D

### Auro-3D®

The Auro-3D® technology suite is a groundbreaking new audio technology that combines height-based listening formats with powerful creative tools to deliver an unrivaled three-dimensional sound experience. Auro-3D® is the general format name for Sound in 3D and its related speaker lay-outs.

### Auro-Matic®

Auro-Matic® up-mixing technology software is a unique creative tool that transforms legacy Mono, Stereo and Surround content into a natural 3D or 2D listening experience.

## ■ Dolby

### Dolby Atmos

Introduced first in the cinema, Dolby Atmos brings a revolutionary sense of dimension and immersion to the Home Theater experience. Dolby Atmos is an adaptable and scalable object based format that reproduces audio as independent sounds (or objects) that can be accurately positioned and move dynamically throughout the 3 dimensional listening space during playback. A key ingredient of Dolby Atmos is the introduction of a height plane of sound above the listener.

### Dolby Atmos Stream

Dolby Atmos content will be delivered to your Dolby Atmos Enabled AV receiver via Dolby Digital Plus or Dolby TrueHD on Blu-ray Disc, downloadable files and streaming media. A Dolby Atmos stream contains special metadata that describes the positioning of sounds within the room. This object audio data is decoded by a Dolby Atmos AV receiver and scaled for optimum playback through Home Theater speaker systems of every size and configuration.





## Dolby Digital

Dolby Digital is a multi-channel digital signal format developed by Dolby Laboratories.

A total of 5.1-channels are played: 3 front channels (“FL”, “FR” and “C”), 2 surround channels (“SL” and “SR”) and the “LFE” channel for low frequency effects.

Because of this, there is no crosstalk between channels and a realistic sound field with a “three-dimensional” feeling (sense of distance, movement and positioning) is achieved. This delivers a thrilling surround sound experience in the home.

## Dolby Digital Plus

Dolby Digital Plus is an improved Dolby Digital signal format that is compatible with up to 7.1-channels of discrete digital sound and also improves sound quality thanks to extra data bit rate performance. It is upwardly compatible with conventional Dolby Digital, so it offers greater flexibility in response to the source signal and the conditions of the playback device.

## Dolby Surround

Dolby Surround is a next generation surround technology that intelligently up mixes stereo; 5.1 and 7.1 content for playback through your surround speaker system. Dolby Surround is compatible with traditional speaker layouts, as well as Dolby Atmos enabled playback systems that employ in-ceiling speakers or products with Dolby speaker technology.

## Dolby Speaker Technology (Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers)

A convenient alternative to speakers built into the ceiling, Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers employ the ceiling above you as a reflective surface for reproducing audio in the height plane above the listener. These speakers feature a unique upward firing driver and special signal processing. These features can be built into a conventional speaker or standalone speaker module. The features minimally impact the overall speaker footprint while providing an immersive listening experience during Dolby Atmos and Dolby Surround playback.

## Dolby TrueHD

Dolby TrueHD is a high definition audio technology developed by Dolby Laboratories, using lossless coding technology to faithfully reproduce the sound of the studio master.

This format provides the facility to support up to 8 audio channels with a sampling frequency of 96 kHz/24 bit resolution and up to 6 audio channels with a sampling frequency of 192 kHz/24 bit resolution.



### Speaker Virtualizer

Dolby Atmos height virtualization is a digital signal processing solution that leverages Dolby's deep understanding of human audio perception to create the sensation of overhead sound from the listener-level speakers. This signal processing applies height-cue filters to overhead audio components contained within the audio signal before they are mixed into the listener-level speakers.

These filters simulate the natural spectral cues imparted by our ears to sounds that originate from overhead.

For stereo and 3.1-channel speaker configuration, Dolby Atmos height virtualization is combined with surround virtualization to create an enveloping 360-degree audio minus the speakers that would ordinarily be employed behind or to the side of the listener.

## ■ DTS

### Dialog Control

Gives you control of the listening experience. You can lift the dialog out from the background sounds when clarity and intelligibility are desired. This requires that content has been authored to support Dialog Control.

### DTS

This is an abbreviation of Digital Theater System, which is a digital audio system developed by DTS. DTS delivers a powerful and dynamic surround sound experience, and is found in the world's finest movie theaters and screening rooms.

### DTS 96/24

DTS 96/24 is a digital audio format enabling high sound quality playback in 5.1-channels with a sampling frequency of 96 kHz and 24 bit quantization on DVD-Video.

### DTS Digital Surround

DTS™ Digital Surround is the standard digital surround format of DTS, Inc., compatible with a sampling frequency of 44.1 or 48 kHz and up to 5.1-channels of digital discrete surround sound.



**DTS-ES™ Discrete 6.1**

DTS-ES™ Discrete 6.1 is a 6.1-channel discrete digital audio format adding a surround back (SB) channel to the DTS digital surround sound. Decoding of conventional 5.1-channel audio signals is also possible according to the decoder.

**DTS-ES™ Matrix 6.1**

DTS-ES™ Matrix 6.1 is a 6.1-channel audio format that inserts a surround back (SB) channel to the DTS digital surround sound through matrix encoding. Decoding of conventional 5.1-channel audio signals is also possible according to the decoder.

**DTS Express**

DTS Express is an audio format supporting low bit rates (max. 5.1-channels, 24 to 256 kbps).

**DTS-HD**

This audio technology provides higher sound quality and enhanced functionality than the conventional DTS and is adopted as an optional audio for Blu-ray Disc.

This technology supports multi-channel, high data transfer speed, high sampling frequency, and lossless audio playback. Maximum 7.1-channels are supported in Blu-ray Disc.

**DTS-HD High Resolution Audio**

DTS-HD High Resolution Audio is an improved version of the conventional DTS, DTS-ES and DTS 96/24 signals formats, compatible with sampling frequencies of 96 or 48 kHz and up to 7.1-channels of discrete digital sound. High data bit rate performance provides high quality sound. This format is fully compatible with conventional products, including conventional DTS digital surround 5.1-channel data.

**DTS-HD Master Audio**

DTS-HD Master Audio is a lossless audio format created by Digital Theater System (DTS). This format provides the facility to support up to 8 audio channels with a sampling frequency of 96 kHz/24 bit resolution and up to 6 audio channels with a sampling frequency of 192 kHz/24 bit resolution. It is fully compatible with conventional products, including conventional DTS digital surround 5.1-channel data.

**DTS:X**

DTS:X produces a hemisphere of audio, where flyovers as well as ambient backgrounds become truly enveloping. DTS:X objects enable audio to move smoothly from one speaker to any other creating life-like realism.



**DTS Neural:X**

Enables an immersive audio experience for older content. DTS Neural:X can upmix your stereo, 5.1 or 7.1 content to take full advantage of all speakers in your surround sound system.

**DTS Virtual:X**

DTS Virtual:X allows you to enjoy multi-dimensional sound regardless of room size, layout, or speaker configuration.

**IMAX®**

IMAX® is well admired around the world for a premium large format movie experience. IMAX delivers the most advanced movie projection technology combined with rich, deep sound.

**■ Audio****AL32 Processing Multi Channel**

AL32 Processing for All Channels

Denon has further developed its proprietary AL32 Processing, an analog waveform reproduction technology, to support the 192 kHz sampling frequency. AL32 Processing, thoroughly suppresses quantization noise associated with D/A conversion to reproduce the low-level signals with optimum clarity that will bring out all the delicate nuances of the music.

**Apple Lossless Audio Codec**

This is a codec for lossless audio compression method developed by Apple Inc. This codec can be played back on iTunes, iPod or iPhone. Data compressed to approximately 60 – 70 % can be decompressed to exactly the same original data.

**Bass Sync**

Audio sources such as BD and DVD inherently have time delay between the bass components of the satellite channel and the LFE channel. This function adjusts such a delay for reproducing (replaying) richer bass sound during playback. This function is by default set to 0 msec. Since the delay varies according to the title, play back the audio source and adjust to the most effective value for playback. For some audio sources that are played back, this function may have little effect.



### FLAC (Free Lossless Audio Codec)

FLAC stands for Free lossless Audio Codec, and is a lossless free audio file format. Lossless means that the audio is compressed without any loss in quality.

The FLAC license is as shown below.

Copyright (C) 2000, 2001, 2002, 2003, 2004, 2005, 2006, 2007, 2008, 2009 Josh Coalson

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- Neither the name of the Xiph.org Foundation nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE FOUNDATION OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

### LFE

This is an abbreviation of Low Frequency Effect, which is an output channel that emphasizes low frequency effect sound. Surround audio is intensified by outputting 20 Hz to 120 Hz deep bass to the system subwoofer(s).

### MP3 (MPEG Audio Layer-3)

This is an internationally standardized audio data compression scheme, using the "MPEG-1" video compression standard. It compresses the data volume to about one eleventh its original size while maintaining sound quality equivalent to a music CD.



### **MPEG (Moving Picture Experts Group), MPEG-2, MPEG-4**

These are the names for digital compression format standards used for the encoding of video and audio. Video standards include “MPEG-1 Video”, “MPEG-2 Video”, “MPEG-4 Visual”, “MPEG-4 AVC”. Audio standards include “MPEG-1 Audio”, “MPEG-2 Audio”, “MPEG-4 AAC”.

### **WMA (Windows Media Audio)**

This is audio compression technology developed by Microsoft Corporation.

WMA data can be encoded using Windows Media® Player.

To encode WMA files, only use applications authorized by Microsoft Corporation. If you use an unauthorized application, the file may not work properly.

### **Sampling frequency**

Sampling involves taking a reading of a sound wave (analog signal) at regular intervals and expressing the height of the wave at each reading in digitized format (producing a digital signal).

The number of readings taken in one second is called the “sampling frequency”. The larger the value, the closer the reproduced sound is to the original.

### **Speaker impedance**

This is an AC resistance value, indicated in  $\Omega$  (ohms). Greater power can be obtained when this value is smaller.

### **Dialogue normalization function**

This function operates automatically during playback of Dolby Digital, Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby TrueHD, Dolby Atmos, DTS or DTS-HD sources. It automatically corrects the standard signal level for individual program sources.

### **Dynamic range**

The difference between the maximum undistorted sound level and the minimum discernible level above the noise emitted by the device.

### **Downmix**

This function converts the number of channels of surround audio to a lower number of channels and plays back according to the system’s configuration.



## ■ Video

### ISF

ISF (Imaging Science Foundation) is an organization that certifies video technicians who are then qualified to carry out calibration and adjustment to match the installation conditions. It also sets quality standards for the optimization of device video performance.

### Progressive (sequential scanning)

This is a scanning system of the video signal that displays 1 frame of video as one image. Compared to the interlace system, this system provides images with less flickering and jagged edges.

## ■ Network

### AirPlay

AirPlay sends (plays) contents recorded in iTunes or on an iPhone/iPod touch/iPad to a compatible device via the network.

### WEP Key (network key)

This is key information used for encrypting data when conducting data transfer. On this unit, the same WEP key is used for data encryption and decryption, so the same WEP key must be set on both devices in order for communications to be established between them.

### Wi-Fi®

Wi-Fi Certification assures tested and proven interoperability by the Wi-Fi Alliance, a group certifying interoperability among wireless LAN devices.

### WPA (Wi-Fi Protected Access)

This is a security standard established by the Wi-Fi Alliance. In addition to the conventional SSID (network name) and WEP key (network key), it also uses a user identification function and encrypting protocol for stronger security.

### WPA2 (Wi-Fi Protected Access 2)

This is a new version of the WPA established by the Wi-Fi Alliance, compatible with more secure AES encryption.



### WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK (Pre-shared Key)

This is a simple authentication system for mutual authentication when a preset character string matches on the wireless LAN access point and client.

### Network Names (SSID: Service Set Identifier)

When forming wireless LAN networks, groups are formed to prevent interference, data theft, etc. These groups are based on "SSID (network names)". For enhanced security, a WEP key is set so that communication is unavailable unless both the "SSID" and the WEP key match. This is suitable for constructing a simplified network.

## ■ Others

### Denon Link HD

Denon Link HD uses the clock of the AV amplifier connected by Denon Link HD to achieve HDMI signal transfer with low jitter.

### HDCP

When transmitting digital signals between devices, this copyright protection technology encrypts the signals to prevent content from being copied without authorization.

### MAIN ZONE

The room where this unit is placed is called the MAIN ZONE.

### Pairing

Pairing (registration) is an operation that is required in order to connect a Bluetooth device to this unit using Bluetooth. When paired, the devices authenticate each other and can connect without mistaken connections occurring.

When using Bluetooth connection for the first time, you need to pair this unit and the Bluetooth device to be connected.

### Protection circuit

This is a function to prevent damage to devices within the power supply when an abnormality such as an overload, excess voltage occurs or over temperature for any reason.





## Trademark information



Apple, AirPlay, iPad, iPad Air, iPad Pro and iPhone are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

The trademark "iPhone" is used in Japan with a license from Aiphone K.K.

Use of the Works with Apple badge means that an accessory has been designed to work specifically with the technology identified in the badge and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards.

**AUDYSSEY**  
 MULTEQ XT32  
 DYNAMIC VOLUME

**AUDYSSEY**  
 LFC

Manufactured under license from Audyssey Laboratories™. U.S. and foreign patents pending. Audyssey MultEQ® XT32, Audyssey Dynamic EQ®, Audyssey Dynamic Volume® and Audyssey LFC™ are registered trademarks of Audyssey Laboratories.

**AURO3D**<sup>®</sup>  
 AUDIO

Manufactured under license from Auro Technologies.

Auro-3D<sup>®</sup> and the related symbols are registered trademarks of Auro Technologies. All materials contained in this work are protected by copyright law and may not be reproduced, distributed, transmitted, displayed, published or broadcast without the prior written permission of Auro Technologies NV or in case of third party materials, the owner of that content. You may not alter or remove any trademark, copyright or other notice from copies of the content.

Auro Technologies: mail [info@auro-technologies.com](mailto:info@auro-technologies.com),  
 phone +32-(0)-14314343, fax +32-(0)-14321224,  
[www.auro-technologies.com](http://www.auro-technologies.com)

 **Bluetooth**

The Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by D&M Holdings Inc. is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.





COMPATIBLE  
DOLBY  
VISION

Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby, Dolby Atmos, Dolby Audio, Dolby Surround, Dolby Vision, and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.



dts  
VIRTUAL

For DTS patents, see <http://patents.dts.com>. Manufactured under license from DTS, Inc. DTS, the Symbol, DTS and the Symbol together, DTS:X, the DTS:X logo, Virtual:X, and the DTS Virtual:X logo are registered trademarks and/or trademarks of DTS, Inc. in the United States and/or other countries. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

IMAX<sup>®</sup>  
ENHANCED

Manufactured under license from IMAX Corporation. IMAX<sup>®</sup> is a registered trademark of IMAX Corporation in the United States and/or other countries. All Rights Reserved. For DTS patents, see <http://patents.dts.com>. Manufactured under license from DTS, Inc. DTS, the Symbol, DTS and the Symbol together are registered trademarks or trademarks of DTS, Inc. in the United States and/or other countries © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.



The MPEG-H TV Audio system logo is a trademark of Fraunhofer IIS and is registered in Germany and other countries.





The terms HDMI, HDMI High-Definition Multimedia Interface, and the HDMI Logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing Administrator, Inc.

This item incorporates copy protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights of Rovi Corporation. Reverse engineering and disassembly are prohibited.

HDR10+™ logo is a trademark of HDR10+ Technologies, LLC.



The Wi-Fi CERTIFIED logo is a registered trademark of the Wi-Fi Alliance.

Wi-Fi Certification provides assurance that the device has passed the interoperability test conducted by the Wi-Fi Alliance, a group that certifies interoperability among wireless LAN devices.



# Specifications

---

## ■ Audio section

### • Power amplifier

#### Rated output:

#### Front:

150 W + 150 W (8  $\Omega$ /ohms, 20 Hz – 20 kHz with 0.05 % T.H.D.)

190 W + 190 W (6  $\Omega$ /ohms, 1 kHz with 0.7 % T.H.D.)

#### Center:

150 W (8  $\Omega$ /ohms, 20 Hz – 20 kHz with 0.05 % T.H.D.)

190 W (6  $\Omega$ /ohms, 1 kHz with 0.7 % T.H.D.)

#### Surround:

150 W + 150 W (8  $\Omega$ /ohms, 20 Hz – 20 kHz with 0.05 % T.H.D.)

190 W + 190 W (6  $\Omega$ /ohms, 1 kHz with 0.7 % T.H.D.)

#### Surround back / Height1 / Height2 / Height3 / Height4/Front wide:

150 W + 150 W (8  $\Omega$ /ohms, 20 Hz – 20 kHz with 0.05 % T.H.D.)

190 W + 190 W (6  $\Omega$ /ohms, 1 kHz with 0.7 % T.H.D.)

#### Dynamic power:

170 W x 2-channel (8  $\Omega$ /ohms)

280 W x 2-channel (4  $\Omega$ /ohms)

#### Output connectors:

4 – 16  $\Omega$ /ohms



- Analog

<b>Input sensitivity:</b>	200 mV
<b>Frequency response:</b>	10 Hz – 100 kHz — +1, -3 dB (Direct mode)
<b>S/N:</b>	102 dB (IHF-A weighted, Direct mode)
<b>Distortion:</b>	0.005 % (20 Hz – 20 kHz) (Direct mode)
<b>Rated output:</b>	1.2 V

- Digital

<b>D/A output:</b>	Rated output — 2 V (at 0 dB playback) Total harmonic distortion — 0.008 % (1 kHz, at 0 dB) S/N ratio — 102 dB Dynamic range — 100 dB
<b>Digital input:</b>	Format — Digital audio interface

- Phono equalizer

<b>Input sensitivity:</b>	2.5 mV
<b>RIAA deviation:</b>	±1 dB (20 Hz to 20 kHz)
<b>S/N:</b>	74 dB (IHF-A)
<b>Distortion factor:</b>	0.03 % (1 kHz, 3 V)



## ■ Video section

### • Standard video connectors

**Input/output level and impedance:** 1 Vp-p, 75  $\Omega$ /ohms  
**Frequency response:** 5 Hz – 10 MHz — 0, –3 dB

### • Color component video connector

**Input/output level and impedance:** Y signal — 1 Vp-p, 75  $\Omega$ /ohms  
 $P_B / C_B$  signal — 0.7 Vp-p, 75  $\Omega$ /ohms  
 $P_R / C_R$  signal — 0.7 Vp-p, 75  $\Omega$ /ohms  
**Frequency response:** 5 Hz – 60 MHz — 0, –3 dB

## ■ Wireless LAN section

**Network type (wireless LAN standard):** Conforming to IEEE 802.11a/b/g/n  
(Wi-Fi® compliant) \*1

**Security:** WEP 64 bit, WEP 128 bit  
WPA/WPA2-PSK (AES)  
WPA/WPA2-PSK (TKIP)

**Used frequency range:** 2.4 GHz, 5 GHz

\*1 The Wi-Fi® CERTIFIED Logo and the Wi-Fi CERTIFIED On-Product Logo are registered trademarks of the Wi-Fi Alliance.



## ■ Bluetooth section





<b>Communications system:</b>	Bluetooth Specification Version 4.2
<b>Transmission power:</b>	Bluetooth Specification Power Class 1
<b>Maximum communication range:</b>	Approx. 30 m in line of sight *2
<b>Used frequency range:</b>	2.4 GHz
<b>Modulation scheme:</b>	FHSS (Frequency-Hopping Spread Spectrum)
<b>Supported profiles:</b>	A2DP (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile) 1.2 AVRCP (Audio Video Remote Control Profile) 1.5
<b>Corresponding codec:</b>	SBC
<b>Transmission range (A2DP):</b>	20 Hz – 20,000 Hz

\*2 The actual communication range varies depending on the influence of such factors as obstructions between devices, electromagnetic waves from microwave ovens, static electricity, cordless phones, reception sensitivity, antenna performance, operating system, application software etc.



## ■ General

<b>Operating temperature:</b>	5 °C - 35 °C
<b>Power supply:</b>	AC 230 V, 50/60 Hz
<b>Power consumption:</b>	900 W
<b>Power consumption in standby modes:</b>	

Standby modes	Setting items in the menu			Power consumption
	Network Control (  p. 256)	Allow Update (  p. 268)	HDMI Pass Through (  p. 199) / HDMI Control (  p. 201)	
Normal standby	Off In Standby	Off	Off	0.1 W
Network control (Bluetooth)	Always On	–	Off	2.9 W
Network control (Ethernet)	Always On	–	Off	2.9 W
Network control (Wi-Fi)	Always On	–	Off	3.7 W
CEC standby	Off In Standby	Off	On	0.5 W
RS-232C standby *	Off In Standby	Off	Off	0.5 W

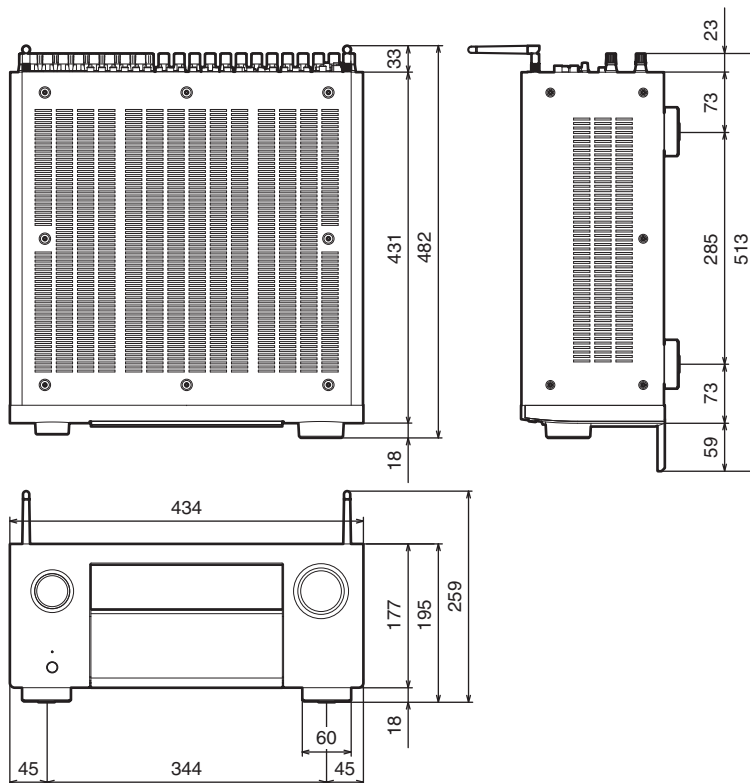
\* When this unit is in standby mode by sending a standby command from the external controller via the RS-232C connector of this unit.

For purposes of improvement, specifications and design are subject to change without notice.





## ■ Dimensions (Unit : mm)



## ■ Weight: 23.6 kg

# Index

## Numerics

11.1-channel .....	74, 76, 77
13.1-channel .....	63
15.1-channel .....	68
3D .....	317
4K/8K .....	317
5.1-channel .....	39, 48
7.1-channel .....	38, 49
9.1-channel .....	54

## A

AirPlay .....	127
All Zone Stereo .....	138
Audio formats .....	319, 323, 325, 326
Audio settings .....	175, 180
Audyssey Dynamic EQ® .....	327
Audyssey Dynamic Volume® .....	327
Audyssey LFC™ .....	327
Audyssey MultEQ® XT32 .....	327
Audyssey settings .....	192, 219
Audyssey Sub EQ HT™ .....	218
Audyssey® Setup .....	217
Auto sound mode .....	142
Auto Standby .....	262

## B

Bi-amp .....	74
Bluetooth device .....	108
Blu-ray Disc player .....	88, 102

## C

Cable TV .....	87
----------------	----

## D

Denon Link HD .....	336
Direct sound mode .....	148
Display .....	22
Dolby Atmos .....	328
Dolby sound mode .....	143, 329
DTS sound mode .....	144, 330
DVD player .....	88, 102

## E

ECO Mode .....	259
External control device .....	97

## F

Firmware Update .....	267
Front panel .....	18

## G

Game console .....	91
General settings .....	178, 259

## H

HDCP .....	320
HDMI Control .....	155, 201
HEOS Account .....	119, 258
HEOS Favorites .....	132



<b>I</b>		<b>N</b>		<b>R</b>
Input Assign .....	212	NAS .....	114	Rear panel .....
Input settings .....	176, 212	Network settings .....	251	Remote control unit .....
Input source .....	101			Resetting factory settings .....
Internet Radio .....	112	<b>O</b>		Resetting network settings .....
		Original sound mode .....	147	Restorer .....
<b>L</b>				
Listening position .....	217	<b>P</b>		<b>S</b>
		Pairing .....	108, 110	Satellite tuner .....
<b>M</b>		PC .....	114	Set-top box .....
Menu map .....	175	PCM multi-channel sound mode .....	146	Setup Assistant .....
Muting .....	102	Picture Mode .....	197	Sleep timer .....
		Protection circuit .....	336	Sound mode .....
		Pure direct .....	142	Speaker connection .....
				Speaker settings .....
		<b>Q</b>		Spotify .....
		Queue .....	104, 115, 122	Stereo sound mode .....
		Quick select plus .....	160	





## T

Tips .....	292
Troubleshooting .....	294
TV .....	83, 84, 85



## U

USB memory device .....	94, 103
-------------------------	---------



## V

Video camcorder .....	91
Video Conversion .....	205, 321
Video Select .....	136
Video settings .....	175, 197
Volume .....	102, 134



## W

Web control .....	166
Wi-Fi settings .....	252
Wired LAN .....	95, 251
Wireless LAN .....	96, 252



## Z

ZONE2/ZONE3 .....	77, 168
-------------------	---------



**DENON®**

[www.denon.com](http://www.denon.com)

3520 10787 00AD

©2021 Sound United. All Rights Reserved.